



Subject: Agenda for Special Meeting of the AUASB (Teleconference)

Venue: Ken Spencer Room, AUASB offices
Level 7, 600 Bourke St, Melbourne

Time: 19 May 2015 from 10.00 a.m. to 12.00 p.m.

Time

10.00 a.m. – 12.00 p.m. **Agenda Item 1 *ASA 720 The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information***

To consider and approve a proposed exposure draft for
ISA/ASA 720 The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

Interested stakeholders are welcome to come to the

AUASB Board room to listen to the discussion



AUASB Special Board Meeting Summary Paper

AGENDA ITEM NO. **1**

Meeting Date: 19 May 2015

Subject: ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information*

Date Prepared: 11 May 2015

☒ Action Required

☐ For Information Purposes Only

Agenda Item Objectives

1. To consider for approval Exposure Draft of revised ASA 720, based on recently revised and re-issued ISA 720.

Background

1. The AUASB considered the issues paper on revised issued ISA 720 and the suggested disposition of each item at its meeting on 20 April 2015. The AUASB also considered and approved the related compelling reasons documentation at the same meeting. The AUASB did not consider issues related to the conforming amendments arising from ISA 720 at this time.

Matters to Consider

Part A – General

2. The AUASB is also requested to consider the updated issues paper and agreed disposition of each item (from 20 April 2015 meeting) at Agenda Item 1.1.

Note: This issues paper now also incorporates, within new Table 3, consideration of the pre-existing “Aus” paragraphs contained in Standards impacted by the ASA 720 conforming amendments. These Standards are: ASAs 210, 230, 260, 450, 500, 510, 560, 570, 580, 600, 700, 701, 705, 706, 710 and 810.

3. The AUASB is requested to consider the proposed Exposure Draft of revised ASA 720 (clean version). [Refer Agenda Item 1.3.] A marked up version is available (for information only) at Agenda Item 1.4.
4. The AUASB is requested to consider the proposed Amending Standard Exposure Draft containing conforming amendments to other Auditing Standards arising from revised ASA 720. [Refer Agenda Item 1.5.]

Note: for ease of identification and review, existing “Aus” paragraphs within the Standards impacted by the conforming amendments that are proposed to be deleted are highlighted in yellow on Agenda Item 1.5. Such “Aus” paragraphs have been reviewed as part of the compelling reasons process. This highlight will be removed from the text prior to the Exposure Draft being issued.

This document contains preliminary views and/or AUASB Technical Group recommendations to be considered at a meeting of the AUASB, and does not necessarily reflect the final decisions of the AUASB. No responsibility is taken for the results of actions or omissions to act on the basis of reliance on any information contained in this document (including any attachments), or for any errors or omissions in it.

5. The AUASB is requested to consider the related Explanatory Memorandum which is proposed to be issued with the Exposure Draft. [Refer Agenda Item 1.6]

Note these two currently separate documents will be joined together into one Exposure Draft (ED 02/15) for exposure purposes, together with the Explanatory Memorandum. This is consistent with the approach taken with Auditor Reporting.

Part B – NZAuASB

The AUASB has liaised with the NZAuASB on the issue of possible changes to ASA 720.

Part C – “Compelling Reasons” Assessment

1. The AUASB is requested to consider the updated compelling reasons documentation, reflecting agreed outcomes on issues identified in the issues paper [at Agenda Item 1.1] from revising ASA 720 (20 April 2015 meeting).

Note: This compelling reasons documentation now also incorporates the proposed retention of the “Aus” paragraph Aus 4.1 contained in ASA 810 (as identified from the updated issues paper in Part A, item 1. Above) [See proposed modification (2)]

The proposed changes conform to IAASB modification guidelines for NSS?

Y ☒ N ☐

AUASB Technical Group Recommendations

Approve the Exposure Draft of revised ASA 720 (including related conforming amendments) and Explanatory Memorandum for issuance on public exposure for a period of 60 days.

Material Presented

Agenda Item 1	AUASB Board Meeting Summary Paper
Agenda Item 1.1	ASA 720 Issues Paper
Agenda Item 1.2	ASA 720 Compelling Reasons documentation
Agenda Item 1.3	Exposure Draft 02/15 – ASA 720 (clean)
Agenda Item 1.4	Exposure Draft 02/15 – ASA 720 (marked up) [for information only]
Agenda Item 1.5	Exposure Draft 02/15 – Amending Standard (conforming amendments)
Agenda Item 1.6	Explanatory Memorandum to ASA 720 and related conforming amendments
Agenda Item 1.7	Final ISA 720 [for information only]
Agenda Item 1.8	Extant ASA 720 [for information only]

Action Required

No.	Action Item	Deliverable	Responsibility	Due Date	Status
1.	Consider and Approve the Exposure Draft for issuance	Approval	AUASB	29 May 2015	o/s

ISA 720 Issues – identification of matters for the AUASB to consider

Introduction:

Table 1, Table 2 and Table 3 are intended to be ongoing works in progress designed to facilitate:

- (a) The capture of issues raised by the AUASB, the NZAuASB, the AUASB/NZAuASB technical staff and constituents in Australia and New Zealand, for the purpose of developing the Australian Exposure Drafts;
- (b) The disposition of all issues raised, **including transfer to the “compelling reasons” process**; and
- (c) Timely communication with the NZAuASB and the NZAuASB technical staff in accordance with the AUASB/NZAuASB Communication Protocols.

**Table 1: Issues arising from the IAASB Standard ISA 720
[as considered and resolved at 20 April 2015 meeting]**

Para. Ref	ISSUE	COMMENTS	AUASB’s DISPOSITION
3 (Effective date)	No specific reference to early adoption.	<u>Suggestion</u> : Allow early adoption to align with other related auditor reporting standards with the same application date. All IAASB’s standards are permitted to be adopted early unless specifically prohibited. This point is clearly made in IAASB Agenda paper 2-4 (September 2014) on Auditor Reporting.	No specific reference is required.
7 (Scope)	This ISA does not apply to: (a) Preliminary announcements of financial information; or (b) Securities offering documents, including prospectuses.	Previously the ISA included within the scope “securities offerings” (refer extant paragraph 2.) however the IAASB considered that this was no longer appropriate. Accordingly, <u>suggest</u> do not amend scope.	Agreed - do not amend
12 (a) (Definition)	Annual report – A document, or combination of documents, prepared typically on an annual basis by management or those charged with governance in accordance with law, regulation or custom, the purpose of which is to provide owners (or similar stakeholders) with information on the	New definition included in ISA limits other information to that included in an “annual report”. It could be interpreted to include “analyst/investor briefings” type documents. The ISA is silent on this in the related guidance at paragraph A5. <u>Suggest</u> do not amend “annual report”	Agreed - do not amend

Para. Ref	ISSUE	COMMENTS	AUASB's DISPOSITION
	entity's operations and the entity's financial results and financial position as set out in the financial statements. An annual report contains or accompanies the financial statements and the auditor's report thereon and usually includes information about the entity's developments, its future outlook and risks and uncertainties, a statement by the entity's governing body, and reports covering governance matters. (Ref: Para. A1–A5)	definition. Instead, suggest clarifying the status of “analyst/investor briefings” in guidance at paragraph A5. Refer paragraph A5 (below) for discussion and suggested resolution.	
12(c) (Definition)	Other information – Financial or non-financial information (other than financial statements and the auditor's report thereon) included in an entity's annual report. (Ref: Para. A8–A10)	Previously the ISA included a wider range of documents that could be incorporated within the “other information” definition (extant other definition at paragraph 5(a) – “any document containing an audited financial report and the auditor's report thereon”). The ISA now limits “other information” to that contained in an annual report (see paragraph 12(a)) <u>Suggest</u> do not amend “other information” definition.	Agreed - do not amend
13 (Planning)	The auditor shall: (Ref: Para. A8–A18) (a) Determine, through discussion with management, which document(s) comprises the annual report, and the entity's planned manner and timing of the issuance of such document(s); (b) Make appropriate arrangements with management to obtain in a timely manner and, if possible, prior to the date of the auditor's report, <u>the final version of the document(s)</u> comprising the annual report; and (c) When some or all of the document(s) determined in (a) will not be available until after the date of the auditor's report, request management to provide a written representation that the final	Sub-paragraph (b) (underlined text) requires the other information to be the “final version of the annual report”. Related guidance at paragraph A12 indicates that this is the version that has been approved by those charged with governance for issuance. The AUASB (and NZAuASB) raised this definition as a concern with the IAASB through the exposure draft process given that in Australia and NZ, it is understood that few entities have this version of the annual report ready and available to the auditor's prior to signing date. The IAASB concluded in finalising the ISA that only the “final version of the document” was appropriate as anything less was subject to change and auditors should only report on the final version.	Agreed - do not amend

Para. Ref	ISSUE	COMMENTS	AUASB's DISPOSITION
	<p>version of the document(s) will be provided to the auditor when available, and prior to its issuance by the entity, such that the auditor can complete the procedures required by this ISA. (Ref: Para. A19)</p>	<p>This requirement, when read in conjunction with the ISA exception-based reporting requirements in paragraphs 21 and 22, means:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> for non-listed entities, no inclusion of a other information section in the auditor's report; and for listed entities, the inclusion of a other information section in the auditor's report that would merely state that the auditor expects to receive the other information (annual report) after the signing date. <p><u>Suggest</u> no change to this requirement given the IAASB's stated intent of the other information to be the final version. Instead, suggest a change to the actual reporting requirements in paragraphs 21 and 22 (see below).</p>	
<p>14 & 15 (Work effort)</p>	<p>Paragraph 14:</p> <p>The auditor shall read the other information and, in doing so shall: (Ref: Para. A23–A24)</p> <p>(a) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the financial statements. As the basis for this consideration, the auditor shall, to evaluate their consistency, compare selected amounts or other items in the other information (that are intended to be the same as, to summarize, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial statements) with such amounts or other items in the financial statements; and (Ref: Para. A25–A29)</p> <p>(b) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's</p>	<p>The ISA intentionally does not make the work effort procedures prescriptive in respect of the other information, rather principles-based, allowing for auditors to use professional judgement they consider appropriate in the circumstances. Related guidance provides examples of some (but not all) of the procedures that auditors may select.</p> <p>Accordingly, <u>suggest</u> no change to these requirements.</p>	<p>Agreed - do not amend</p>

Para. Ref	ISSUE	COMMENTS	AUASB's DISPOSITION
	<p>knowledge obtained in the audit, in the context of audit evidence obtained and conclusions reached in the audit. (Ref: Para. A30–A36)</p> <p>Paragraph 15:</p> <p>While reading the other information in accordance with paragraph 14, the auditor shall remain alert for indications that the other information not related to the financial statements or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit appears to be materially misstated. (Ref: Para. A24, A37–A38)</p>		
16	<p>If the auditor identifies that a material inconsistency appears to exist (or becomes aware that the other information appears to be materially misstated), the auditor shall discuss the matter with management and, if necessary, perform other procedures to determine whether: (Ref: Para. A34–A38)</p> <p>(a) A material misstatement of the other information exists;</p> <p>(b) A material misstatement of the financial statements exists; or</p> <p>(c) The auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment needs to be updated.</p>	<p>Requirement is not specific in that it allows the auditor the choice of "if necessary perform other procedures", rather than requiring other procedures actually be performed. Given the standard is to be a legislative instrument, suggest that this be amended to clarify that the auditor is required to perform other procedures, as follows:</p> <p><i>"If the auditor identifies that a material inconsistency appears to exist (or becomes aware that the other information appears to be materially misstated), the auditor shall discuss the matter with management and, if necessary, perform other procedures <u>considered appropriate in the auditor's professional judgement to determine whether:</u></i> (Ref: Para. A34–A38) ...</p> <p><u>Suggest</u> transfer to "compelling reasons" test.</p>	<p>Not Agreed – no compelling reason identified to make the suggested amendment.</p> <p>Do not amend.</p>

Para. Ref	ISSUE	COMMENTS	AUASB's DISPOSITION
21 (Reporting)	<p>The auditor's report shall include a separate section with a heading "Other Information", or other appropriate heading, when, at the date of the auditor's report:</p> <p>(a) For an audit of financial statements of a listed entity, the auditor has obtained, or expects to obtain, the other information; or</p> <p>(b) For an audit of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity, the auditor has obtained some or all of the other information.</p>	<p>The ISA requires different reporting on other information dependent on if the entity is listed (always report) or not listed (exception based reporting only), leading to differential reporting (consistent with ISA 701 KAM).</p> <p>It is understood that the NZAuASB is also considering amending this requirement to require reporting for all "FMC reporting entities considered to have higher public accountability" instead of "listed entities". Additionally "other than a FMC reporting entity considered to have a higher level of public accountability" instead of "other than listed entities".</p> <p>(1) Listed entities (21(a))</p> <p>As noted above in the comments on the paragraph 13 definition of "final version for the annual report", this version is seldom prepared by Australian listed entities and made available to auditors prior to signing the auditor's report. It is understood that this is very different from the European experience, (which the ISA assumes) where the other information is usually readily available to the auditor prior to signing the auditor's report (and hence auditors are able to read, consider and report on the other information).</p> <p>Additionally, the requirement does not allow for "some or all of the other information" only "the other information" meaning it must be <i>all</i> of the final version of the annual report, not parts (e.g. chairman's report) provided to the auditor (too hard for the auditor to identify). This is inconsistent with the wording used for "other than listed entities" in paragraph 21(b)).</p> <p>If the ISA was to be adopted as is, the majority of Australian listed entities' auditors, having not received the final version of the annual report before signing date, would include an other information section with wording to the</p>	<p>Not Agreed – no compelling reason identified to make the suggested amendment.</p> <p>Do not amend.</p>

Para. Ref	ISSUE	COMMENTS	AUASB's DISPOSITION
		<p>effect that the other information is expected to be obtained after the date of the auditor's report.</p> <p><u>Suggest</u> no amendments as the auditor of a listed entity would always be required to include an other information section in the auditor's report.</p> <p>(2) Other than listed entities (21(b))</p> <p>The requirement related to other than listed entities allows for exception-based reporting in the auditor's report (i.e. that if there is no other information reporting prepared; there is no need to include an other information section at all.)</p> <p>In Australia other than listed entities (non-listed entities), may <i>not</i> necessarily prepare an annual report, hence there would never be other information reporting and users would not know from reading the auditor's report whether this was the case, or if the entity was to prepare an annual report which was provided to the auditor after the date of the auditor's report. The requirement does not deal with this scenario and it is considered in the public interest that this requirement be amended to ensure the auditor is always required to include an other information section in the auditor's report for other than listed entities. Incorporating such a requirement is consistent with the related guidance in paragraph A52.</p> <p>Additionally, to ensure consistency with the listed entity requirements in paragraph 21 (a), paragraph 21(b) should be amended to remove the "some or all" requirement and to include "expects to obtain."</p> <p>Incorporating the above suggestions, amended paragraph 21 would read as follows:</p> <p><i>"The auditor's report shall include a separate</i></p>	

Para. Ref	ISSUE	COMMENTS	AUASB's DISPOSITION
		<p><i>section with a heading "Other Information", or other appropriate heading, when, at the date of the auditor's report:</i></p> <p>(a) <i>For an audit of financial statements of a listed entity, the auditor has obtained, or expects to obtain, the other information; or</i></p> <p>(b) <i>For an audit of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity either:-</i></p> <p>(i) <i>the auditor has obtained, <u>or expects to obtain</u>, some or all of the other information-<u>or</u>;</i></p> <p>(ii) <i><u>the entity is not required to, and has elected not to, prepare the other information.</u></i></p> <p><u>Suggest</u> transfer to "compelling reasons" test.</p>	
22 (Reporting)	<p>When the auditor's report is required to include an Other Information section in accordance with paragraph 21, this section shall include: (Ref: Para. A53)</p> <p>(a) A statement that management is responsible for the other information;</p> <p>(b) An identification of:</p> <p>(i) Other information, if any, obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report; and</p> <p>(ii) For an audit of financial statements of a listed entity, other information, if any, expected to be obtained after the date of the auditor's report;</p> <p>(c) A statement that the auditor's opinion does not cover the other information</p>	<p>If the AUASB agrees to the changes suggested at paragraph 21 (c) above, sub-paragraph (b) would need to be consequentially amended to accommodate this as follows:</p> <p>...</p> <p>(b) "An identification of:</p> <p>(i) Other information, if any, obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report; and</p> <p>(ii) For an audit of financial statements of a listed entity, other information, if any, expected to be obtained after the date of the auditor's report;</p> <p>(iii) <u>For an audit of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>other information, if any, expected to be obtained after the</u> 	<p>Not Agreed – no compelling reason identified to make the suggested amendment.</p> <p>Do not amend.</p>

Para. Ref	ISSUE	COMMENTS	AUASB's DISPOSITION
	<p>and, accordingly, that the auditor does not express (or will not express) an audit opinion or any form of assurance conclusion thereon;</p> <p>(d) A description of the auditor's responsibilities relating to reading, considering and reporting on other information as required by this ISA; and</p> <p>(e) When other information has been obtained prior to the date of the auditor's report, either:</p> <p>(i) A statement that the auditor has nothing to report; or</p> <p>(ii) If the auditor has concluded that there is an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information, a statement that describes the uncorrected material misstatement of the other information.</p>	<p><i>date of the auditor's report; or</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>That no other information was required to be prepared, and the entity has elected not to prepare, the other information;"</i> <p>...</p> <p><u>Suggest</u> transfer to "compelling reasons test."</p>	
23 (Opinion relationship)	When the auditor expresses a qualified or adverse opinion in accordance with ISA 705 (Revised), the auditor shall consider the implications of the matter giving rise to the modification of opinion for the statement required in paragraph 22(d).	<p>There are two issues identified with this requirement.</p> <p>(1) The requirement does not deal with situations when the auditor has not yet expressed their opinion but rather "intends to express" a qualified or adverse opinion when contemplating paragraph 22(d) implications. This could be clarified by amending the requirement as follows:</p> <p><i>When the auditor expresses, or intends to express, a qualified or adverse opinion in accordance with ISA 705 (Revised), the auditor shall consider the implications of the matter giving rise to the modification of opinion for the statement required in paragraph 22).</i></p>	<p>Not Agreed – no compelling reason identified to make the suggested amendment.</p> <p>Do not amend.</p>

Para. Ref	ISSUE	COMMENTS	AUASB's DISPOSITION
		<p><u>Suggest</u> transfer to “compelling reasons” test.</p> <p>(2) The ISA does not include a requirement to deal with the impact of a disclaimer of opinion on the other information reporting. Guidance only is provided at paragraph A58.</p> <p>It is considered in the public interest given disclaimer of opinions are possible for the paragraph A58 guidance to be elevated to a requirement (located after paragraph 23) and amended (see bold) as follows:</p> <p><i><u>“If the auditor expresses, or intends to express, a disclaimer of opinion on the financial statements in accordance with ISA 705, the auditor is unable to include the paragraph 22 required statement and does not include an other information section.”</u></i></p> <p><u>Suggest</u> transfer to “compelling reasons” test.</p>	
A5 (annual report definition)	<p>An annual report is different in nature, purpose and content from other reports, such as a report prepared to meet the information needs of a specific stakeholder group or a report prepared to comply with a specific regulatory reporting objective (even when such a report is required to be publicly available). Examples of reports that, when issued as standalone documents, are not typically part of the combination of documents that comprise an annual report (subject to law, regulation or custom), and that, therefore, are not other information within the scope of this ISA, include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Separate industry or regulatory reports (for example, capital adequacy 	<p>The extant ISA explicitly excluded “a press release or a transmittal memorandum”; “information contained on the entity’s website” and “information contained in analyst briefings” from being other information (refer extant paragraph A4).</p> <p>Paragraph A5 no longer lists these as exclusions from an annual report. Further, paragraph A3 does not include these within examples of what <i>would be included</i> in the annual report (note: the OFR is included).</p> <p>In respect of “a press release or a transmittal memorandum” and “information contained on the entity’s website, these documents are now implicitly excluded from the ISA as they do not meet the new “annual report” definition in</p>	<p>Not Agreed – no compelling reason identified to make the suggested amendment.</p> <p>Do not amend.</p>

Para. Ref	ISSUE	COMMENTS	AUASB's DISPOSITION
	<p>reports), such as may be prepared in the banking, insurance, and pension industries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Corporate social responsibility reports. • Sustainability reports. • Diversity and equal opportunity reports. • Product responsibility reports. • Labor practices and working conditions reports. • Human rights reports. 	<p>paragraph 12(a).</p> <p>In respect of “information contained in analyst briefings”, it is considered in the public interest to include this as an additional example in paragraph A5 of what would <i>not</i> be other information and therefore excluded from the ISA scope. It is also considered appropriate to include “investor briefings” as these documents are used in Australia and are similar in nature to “analyst briefings”. The amendment would read:</p> <p>...</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Information contained in investor or analyst briefings.</u> <p><u>Suggest</u> transfer to “compelling reasons” test.</p>	
A51 (responding)	<p>In reading the other information, the auditor may become aware of new information that has implications for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The auditor’s understanding of the entity and its environment and, accordingly, may indicate the need to revise the auditor’s risk assessment. • The auditor’s responsibility to evaluate the effect of identified misstatements on the audit and of uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial statements. • The auditor’s responsibilities relating to subsequent events. 	<p>The guidance does not include other relevant examples such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Communications with those charged with governance (ASA 260) • Going concern considerations (ASA 570) • Written representations that are requested of those charged with governance (ASA 580) • Key audit matters (ASA 701) • Comparative information (ASA 710) <p>It is acknowledged that guidance is not meant to be exhaustive and the related requirement at paragraph 20 does require the auditor to “<i>respond appropriately in accordance with other ISAs</i>” – which implicitly includes the above Auditing Standards.</p> <p>Accordingly, <u>suggest</u> no further guidance required.</p>	<p>Not Agreed – no compelling reason identified to make the suggested amendment.</p> <p>Do not amend.</p>
Appendix 2	Illustrative auditor’s reports relating to	Illustrative reports will need to be adapted under the <i>Corporations Act 2001</i> , consistent	

Para. Ref	ISSUE	COMMENTS	AUASB's DISPOSITION
	other information	<p>with approach taken in Auditor Reporting. This is consistent with the NZAuASB approach.</p> <p><u>Suggest</u> transfer to “compelling reasons” process.</p>	

Draft

**Table 2: Issues arising from the extant AUASB Standard ASA 720
[as considered and resolved at 20 April 2015 meeting]**

The following references and extracts (predominantly requirements) are to existing “Aus” paragraphs that will need to be considered under the compelling reasons test.

Any “Aus” paragraphs located in the Application and Other Explanatory Material would need to be considered in conjunction with the relevant requirement.

Para. Ref	Extract	Initial Suggestion	Disposition
Aus 10.1	<p>If revision of the other information is necessary and management refuses to make the revision, the auditor shall communicate this matter to those charged with governance, unless all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity; and</p> <p>...</p> <p>Aus 10.1 Withholding the auditor’s report is not permitted under the <i>Corporations Act 2001</i>.</p>	Do not retain.	Not retained in Exposure Draft
Aus A6.1	For example, the auditor may be required to obtain consent from the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC) prior to resigning from certain audits.	Do not retain.	Not retained in Exposure Draft

Table 3: Issues arising from the extant AUASB Standards subject to Conforming Amendments from ASA 720 [for consideration and resolution at the 19 May 2015 meeting]

The following references and extracts (predominantly requirements) are to existing “Aus” paragraphs within Various Australian Auditing Standards impacted by the ASA 720 conforming amendments, that will need to be considered under the compelling reasons test.

Any “Aus” paragraphs located in the Application and Other Explanatory Material would need to be considered in conjunction with the relevant requirement.

ASA 450

Para. Ref	Extract	Initial Suggestion	Disposition
Aus A1.1	The Australian Accounting Standards explain the role of materiality in making judgements in the preparation and presentation of financial reports by the entity.	Do not retain.	

ASA 560

Para. Ref	Extract	Initial Suggestion	Disposition
Aus 12.1	For an audit engagement conducted under the <i>Corporations Act 2001</i> , management, and those charged with governance, are prohibited from restricting an amendments of the financial report to the effects of the subsequent event or events causing that amendment. Consequently, the auditor is prohibited from restricting audit procedures as required under paragraph 11(b)(i) of this Auditing Standard to such an amendment.	Do not retain.	
Aus A3.1	In some cases, law or regulation may identify the point in the financial reporting process at which the audit is expected to be complete.	Do not retain.	

ASA 810

Para. Ref	Extract	Initial Suggestion	Disposition
Aus 4.1	Summary financial statements means historical financial information that is derived from a financial report, but that contains less detail than the financial report, while still providing a structured representation consistent with that provided by the financial report, of the entity's economic resources or obligations at a point in time or the changes therein for a period of time. Summary financial statements may include an assertion by those responsible for the summary financial statements. Different jurisdictions may use different terminology to describe such historical financial information.	<p>Australian definition to incorporate terminology of “financial report” and “assertion statement” in relation to summary financial statements.</p> <p>It is suggested therefore that this definition be retained.</p> <p><u>Suggest</u> transfer to “compelling reasons” test – item (2).</p>	
Aus 14.1	In circumstance where the auditor's report on the audited financial report has been modified, paragraphs 17-18 of this Auditing Standard require additional elements be included in the auditor's report on the summary financial statements.	Do not retain.	Not retained in Exposure Draft
Aus A6.1	Auditors that are required to issue an auditor's report on a concise financial report prepared under the <i>Corporations Act 2001</i> and Accounting Standard AASB 1039 <i>Concise Financial Reports</i> should refer to guidance contained in GS 001 <i>Concise Financial Reports</i> .	Do not retain.	Not retained in Exposure Draft
Aus A18.1	ASA 700 contains requirements and guidance to be applied when unaudited supplementary information is presented with an audited financial report, which may be helpful in applying the requirement in paragraph 23.	Do not retain.	Not retained in Exposure Draft

Aus A19.1	ASA 720 contains requirements and guidance relating to reading other information included in a document containing the audited financial report and related auditor's report, and responding to material inconsistencies and material misstatements of fact. They may be helpful in applying the requirement in paragraph 24.	Do not retain.	Not retained in Exposure Draft
-----------	---	----------------	--------------------------------

Draft



COMPELLING REASONS TEST FOR PROPOSED MODIFICATIONS TO ASA 720 and Related Conforming Amendments

Revised Standards	ASA 720
Conforming Amendments	ASAs 210, 230, 260, 450, 500, 510, 560, 580, 600, 700, 701, 705, 706, 710, 810

DATE UPDATED: May 2015

DISCLAIMER

This document contains draft proposals to be considered at a meeting of the AUASB, and does not necessarily reflect the final decisions and/or proposals to be contained in a published Exposure Draft or Auditing Standard. No responsibility is taken by the AUASB for the results of reliance, actions or omissions to act on the basis of any information contained in this document (including appendices), or for any errors or omissions in it.

Objective 1:

To present compelling reasons, in accordance with the [Principles of Convergence to International Standards of the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board \(IAASB\) and Harmonisation with the Standards of the New Zealand Auditing and Assurance Standards Board \(NZAuASB\)](#) (August 2014), proposed by the AUASB to be made to modify IAASB standard ISA 720.

Proposed modification (1) to revised international standard ISA 720	
<p>Proposed modification</p> <p>Where applicable, all illustrative example auditor's reports are to be modified or new reports included, to accommodate the requirements of the <i>Corporations Act 2001</i>.</p>	
Rationale for the proposed modification	
The international standard is not consistent with Australian regulatory arrangements.	The ASA (obviously) does not provide examples that comply with local legislative requirements. As the Auditing Standards are made and enforceable under the Act, it is necessary to include relevant example auditor's reports to clarify obligations.
OR	
The international standard does not reflect principles and practices that are considered appropriate in Australia.	n/a
A. Consideration of compelling reason criteria where the international standard is not consistent with Australian regulatory requirements.	
<u>Compelling reason criteria as per agreed Principles of Convergence</u>	<u>Consideration whether the proposed modification meets the criteria</u>
1. The standard can be modified so as to result in a standard the application of which results in effective and efficient compliance with the legal framework in Australia.	Yes. The proposed modifications are not to the requirements, but an enhancement to the Application and Other Explanatory Material – specifically the appendices.
2. The proposed modification does not result in a standard that conflicts with, or results in lesser requirements than the international standard.	There is no conflict or lessening of the ASA requirements merely adaptations to comply with applicable legislation.
B. Consideration of compelling reason criteria where the international standard does not reflect principles and practices that are considered appropriate in Australia.	
<u>Compelling reason criteria as per agreed Principles of Convergence</u>	<u>Consideration whether the proposed modification meets the criteria</u>
1. The application of the proposed modification will result in compliance with principles and practices considered appropriate by the AUASB.	n/a

2. The proposed modification results in a standard that is clear and that promotes consistent application by all practitioners. (For example, excluding options not relevant in Australia and New Zealand)	n/a
3. The proposed modification will promote significant improvement in audit quality in Australia (With improvement in audit quality being linked to one or more of the Applicable Elements in the IAASB's Framework for Audit Quality)	n/a
4. The relative benefits of the modification outweigh the cost (with cost being compliance cost and the cost of differing from the international standard, and benefit relating to audit quality).	n/a
5. The proposed modification does not conflict with or result in lesser requirements than the international standard.	n/a
6. The proposed modification overall does not result in the standard being overly complex and confusing.	n/a
7. The proposed modification does not inadvertently change the meaning of the international standard wording by placing more onerous requirements on a practitioner in Australia than necessary to meet the intent of the international standard.	n/a
C. Conclusion	
Compelling reasons test met/not met?	The compelling reasons test has been met.
Does the Board agree that the proposed modification meets the compelling reason test, and that ASA 720 should be modified as described above?	

Objective 2:

To present compelling reasons, in accordance with the [Principles of Convergence to International Standards of the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board \(IAASB\) and Harmonisation with the Standards of the New Zealand Auditing and Assurance Standards Board \(NZAuASB\)](#) (August 2014), proposed by the AUASB to RETAIN pre-existing “Aus” paragraphs that modified IAASB standards.

Proposed modification (2) to international standard ISA 810	
<p><i>Proposed modification</i></p> <p>The following existing definitions are additional to, or changed from, ISA 810:</p> <p>Aus 4.1</p> <p>Summary financial statements means historical financial information that is derived from a financial report, but that contains less detail than the financial report, while still providing a structured representation consistent with that provided by the financial report, of the entity’s economic resources or obligations at a point in time or the changes therein for a period of time. Summary financial statements may include an assertion by those responsible for the summary financial statements. Different jurisdictions may use different terminology to describe such historical financial information.</p> <p><i>[AUASB comment – ISA definition amended to include an financial report and assertion reference]</i></p>	
Rationale for the proposed modification	
The international standard is not consistent with Australian regulatory arrangements.	The ISAs are not inconsistent with Australian legislation; however, the Aus definitions are considered necessary to ensure applicability in Australia
OR	
The international standard does not reflect principles and practices that are considered appropriate in Australia.	n/a
A. Consideration of compelling reason criteria where the international standard is not consistent with Australian regulatory requirements.	
<u><i>Compelling reason criteria as per agreed Principles of Convergence</i></u>	<u><i>Consideration whether the proposed modification meets the criteria</i></u>
1. The standard can be modified so as to result in a standard the application of which results in effective and efficient compliance with the legal framework in Australia.	<p>Yes.</p> <p>The proposed modification is not to the requirements of the standards, but to a definition and either replace, or are additional to ISA 810</p> <p>Refer “proposed modification” section above for AUASB comments (above) on the definition.</p>
2. The proposed modification does not result in a standard that conflicts with, or results in lesser requirements than the international standard.	There is no conflict or lessening of the ISA requirements.

Proposed modification (2) to international standard ISA 810

B. Consideration of compelling reason criteria where the international standard does not reflect principles and practices that are considered appropriate in Australia.

Compelling reason criteria as per agreed Principles of Convergence

Consideration whether the proposed modification meets the criteria

3. The application of the proposed modification will result in compliance with principles and practices considered appropriate by the AUASB.

n/a

4. The proposed modification results in a standard that is clear and that promotes consistent application by all practitioners. (For example, excluding options not relevant in Australia and New Zealand)

n/a

5. The proposed modification will promote significant improvement in audit quality in Australia (With improvement in audit quality being linked to one or more of the Applicable Elements in the IAASB's Framework for Audit Quality)

n/a

6. The relative benefits of the modification outweigh the cost (with cost being compliance cost and the cost of differing from the international standard, and benefit relating to audit quality).

n/a

7. The proposed modification does not conflict with or result in lesser requirements than the international standard.

n/a

8. The proposed modification overall does not result in the standard being overly complex and confusing.

n/a

9. The proposed modification does not inadvertently change the meaning of the international standard wording by placing more onerous requirements on a practitioner in Australia than necessary to meet the intent of the international standard.

n/a

C. Conclusion

Compelling reasons test met/not met?

The compelling reasons test has been met.

Does the Board agree that retaining the proposed "Aus" paragraph modifications meet the compelling reason test, and that ASA 810 should consequently retain the "Aus" paragraphs?

EXPOSURE DRAFT

ED 02/15

(May 2015)

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720

The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

Issued for Comment by the **Auditing and Assurance Standards Board**

Draft

DISCLAIMER

This document contains draft proposals to be considered at a meeting of the AUASB, and does not necessarily reflect the final decisions and/or proposals to be contained in a published Exposure Draft or Auditing Standard. No responsibility is taken by the AUASB for the results of reliance, actions or omissions to act on the basis of any information contained in this document (including appendices), or for any errors or omissions in it.



Australian Government

Auditing and Assurance Standards Board

Commenting on this Exposure Draft

Comments on this Exposure Draft should be forwarded so as to arrive by no later than 31 July 2015. Comments should be addressed to:

The Chairman
Auditing and Assurance Standards Board
PO Box 204, Collins Street West
Melbourne Victoria 8007 AUSTRALIA
E-mail: edcomments@auasb.gov.au

A copy of all non-confidential submissions will be placed on public record on the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB) website: www.auasb.gov.au

Obtaining a Copy of this Exposure Draft

This Exposure Draft is available on the AUASB website: www.auasb.gov.au

Contact Details

Auditing and Assurance Standards Board
Level 7, 600 Bourke Street
Melbourne Victoria 3000 AUSTRALIA

Phone: (03) 8080 7400
Fax: (03) 8080 7450
E-mail: enquiries@auasb.gov.au

Postal Address:
PO Box 204, Collins Street West
Melbourne Victoria 8007 AUSTRALIA

COPYRIGHT

© 2015 Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB). The text, graphics and layout of this Exposure Draft are protected by Australian copyright law and the comparable law of other countries. Reproduction within Australia in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgment of the source as being the AUASB.

Requests and enquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes within Australia should be addressed to the Executive Director, Auditing and Assurance Standards Board, PO Box 204, Collins Street West, Melbourne, Victoria 8007 or sent to enquiries@auasb.gov.au. Otherwise, no part of this Exposure Draft may be reproduced, stored or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of the AUASB except as permitted by law.

This Exposure Draft reproduces substantial parts of the corresponding International Standard on Auditing issued by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB) and published by the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC), in the manner described in the statement on Conformity with International Standards on Auditing. The AUASB acknowledges that IFAC is the owner of copyright in the International Standard on Auditing incorporated in this Exposure Draft throughout the world.

All existing rights in this material are reserved outside Australia. Reproduction outside Australia in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use only.

Further information and requests for authorisation to reproduce this Exposure Draft for commercial purposes outside Australia should be addressed to the Executive Director, Auditing and Assurance Standards Board, PO Box 204, Collins Street West, Melbourne, Victoria 8007 or sent to enquiries@auasb.gov.au. Any decision to approve a request may also require the agreement of IFAC.

ISSN 1030-603X

CONTENTS

PREFACE

AUTHORITY STATEMENT

CONFORMITY WITH INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS ON AUDITING

	<i>Paragraphs</i>
Application	Aus 0.1-Aus 0.2
Operative Date	Aus 0.3
Introduction	
Scope of this Auditing Standard	1-9
Effective Date	10
Objectives	11
Definitions	12
Requirements	13
Reading and Considering the Other Information	14-15
Responding When a Material Inconsistency Appears to Exist or Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated	16
Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement of the Other Information Exists	17-19
Responding When a Material Misstatement in the Financial Report Exists or the Auditor's Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment Needs to Be Updated	20
Reporting	21-24
Documentation	25
Application and Other Explanatory Material	
Definitions	A1-A10
Obtaining the Other Information	A11-A22
Reading and Considering the Other Information	A23-A24
Considering Whether There is a Material Inconsistency between the Other Information and the Financial Report	A25-A36
Remaining Alert for Other Indications that the Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated	A37-A38
Responding When a Material Inconsistency Appears to Exist or Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated	A39-A43
Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement of the Other Information Exists	A44-A50
Responding When a Material Misstatement in the Financial Report Exists or the Auditor's Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment Needs to Be Updated	A51
Reporting	A52-A59
Appendix 1: Examples of Amounts or Other Items that May be Included in the Other Information	
Appendix 2: Illustrations of Auditor's Reports Relating to Other Information	

PREFACE

Reasons for Issuing ED 02/15

The AUASB issues exposure draft ED 02/15 of proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* pursuant to the requirements of the legislative provisions and the Strategic Direction explained below.

The AUASB is an independent statutory committee of the Australian Government established under section 227A of the *Australian Securities and Investments Commission Act 2001*, as amended (ASIC Act). Under section 336 of the *Corporations Act 2001*, the AUASB may make Auditing Standards for the purposes of the corporations legislation. These Auditing Standards are legislative instruments under the *Legislative Instruments Act 2003*.

Under the Strategic Direction given to the AUASB by the Financial Reporting Council (FRC), the AUASB is required, inter alia, to develop auditing standards that have a clear public interest focus and are of the highest quality.

Main Proposals

This proposed Auditing Standard represents the Australian equivalent of revised ISA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* (April 2015) and will replace the current ASA 720 issued by the AUASB in October 2009.

This proposed Auditing Standard contains differences from the revised ISA 720, which have been made to accord with the Australian legislative environment and to maintain audit quality where the AUASB has considered there are compelling reasons to do so.

Proposed Operative Date

It is intended that this proposed Auditing Standard will be operative for financial reporting periods ending on or after 15 December 2016.

Main changes from existing ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report* (October 2009)

The main differences between this proposed Auditing Standard and the Auditing Standard that it supersedes, ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report* (October 2009), are included in the Tables of Differences provided as an attachment to this Exposure Draft.

Request for Comments

Comments are invited on this Exposure Draft of the proposed re-issuance of ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* by no later than 31 July 2015. The AUASB is seeking comments from respondents on the following questions:

1. Have applicable laws and regulations been appropriately addressed in the proposed standard?
2. Are there any laws or regulations that may, or do, prevent or impede the application of the proposed standard, or may conflict with the proposed standard?
3. What, if any, are the additional significant costs to/benefits for auditors and the business community arising from compliance with the main changes to the requirements of this proposed standard, including, in particular, the requirement contained in paragraph 21 with

respect to reporting on other information in the auditor's report? If there are significant costs, do these outweigh the benefits to the users of audit services?

4. Is the removal of (only) "Aus" paragraph references to the *Corporations Act 2001*—currently included within the requirements and application and other explanatory material—supported?

If removal of existing references is not supported, respondents are asked to indicate their preference for locating the re-instated material within the standard:

- In the requirements and application and other explanatory material (as applicable) of the proposed standard; or
- By inclusion of a cross-referenced listing in an appendix to the standard?

5. Are there any other significant public interest matters that constituents wish to raise?

The AUASB prefers that respondents express a clear opinion on whether the proposed Auditing Standard, as a whole, is supported and that this opinion be supplemented by detailed comments, whether supportive or critical, on the above matters. The AUASB regards both supportive and critical comments as essential to a balanced review of the proposed Auditing Standard.

AUTHORITY STATEMENT

The Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB) makes this Auditing Standard ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* pursuant to section 227B of the *Australian Securities and Investments Commission Act 2001* and section 336 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

This Auditing Standard is to be read in conjunction with ASA 101 *Preamble to Australian Auditing Standards*, which sets out the intentions of the AUASB on how the Australian Auditing Standards, operative for financial reporting periods commencing on or after 1 January 2010, are to be understood, interpreted and applied. This Auditing Standard is to be read also in conjunction with ASA 200 *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Australian Auditing Standards*.

Draft

Conformity with International Standards on Auditing

This Auditing Standard conforms with International Standard on Auditing ISA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* issued by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB), an independent standard-setting board of the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC).

Paragraphs that have been added to this Auditing Standard (and do not appear in the text of the equivalent ISA) are identified with the prefix "Aus".

The following application and other explanatory material is additional to ISA 720:

- Appendix 2 includes [Aus] Illustrations 1A-7A (inclusive) example auditor's reports (in respect of a single company and a group) that conform with the requirements of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

This Auditing Standard incorporates terminology and definitions used in Australia.

Compliance with this Auditing Standard enables compliance with ISA 720.

Draft

AUDITING STANDARD ASA 720

The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

Application

- Aus 0.1 This Auditing Standard applies to:
- (a) an audit of a financial report for a financial year, or an audit of a financial report for a half-year, in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*; and
 - (b) an audit of a financial report, or a complete set of financial statements, for any other purpose.
- Aus 0.2 This Auditing Standard also applies, as appropriate, to an audit of other historical financial information.

Operative Date

- Aus 0.3 This Auditing Standard is operative for financial reporting periods ending on or after 15 December 2016.

Introduction

Scope of this Auditing Standard

1. This Australian Standard on Auditing deals with the auditor's responsibilities relating to other information, whether financial or non-financial information (other than financial report and the auditor's report thereon), included in an entity's annual report. An entity's annual report may be a single document or a combination of documents that serve the same purpose.
2. This Auditing Standard is written in the context of an audit of financial report by an independent auditor. Accordingly, the objectives of the auditor in this Auditing Standard are to be understood in the context of the overall objectives of the auditor as stated in paragraph 11 of ASA 200.¹ The requirements in the Australian Auditing Standards are designed to enable the auditor to achieve the objectives specified in the Australian Auditing Standards, and thereby the overall objectives of the auditor. The auditor's opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information, nor does this Auditing Standard require the auditor to obtain audit evidence beyond that required to form an opinion on the financial report.
3. This Auditing Standard requires the auditor to read and consider the other information because other information that is materially inconsistent with the financial report or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit may indicate that there is a material misstatement of the financial report or that a material misstatement of the other information exists, either of which may undermine the credibility of the financial report and the auditor's report thereon. Such material misstatements may also inappropriately influence the economic decisions of the users for whom the auditor's report is prepared.
4. This Auditing Standard may also assist the auditor in complying with relevant ethical requirements² that require the auditor to avoid being knowingly associated with information that the auditor believes contains a materially false or misleading statement, statements or

¹ See ASA 200 *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with International Standards on Auditing*.

² [Deleted by the AUASB. Refer Footnote *]

* Refer ASA 102 *Compliance with Ethical Requirements when Performing Audits, Reviews and Other Assurance Engagements*.

information furnished recklessly, or omits or obscures information required to be included where such omission or obscurity would be misleading.

5. Other information may include amounts or other items that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail, about amounts or other items in the financial report, and other amounts or other items about which the auditor has obtained knowledge in the audit. Other information may also include other matters.
6. The auditor's responsibilities relating to other information (other than applicable reporting responsibilities) apply regardless of whether the other information is obtained by the auditor prior to, or after, the date of the auditor's report.
7. This Auditing Standard does not apply to:
 - (a) Preliminary announcements of financial information; or
 - (b) Securities offering documents, including prospectuses.
8. The auditor's responsibilities under this Auditing Standard do not constitute an assurance engagement on other information or impose an obligation on the auditor to obtain assurance about the other information.
9. Law or regulation may impose additional obligations on the auditor in relation to other information that are beyond the scope of this Auditing Standard.

Effective Date

10. [Deleted by the AUASB. Refer Aus 0.3]

Objectives

11. The objectives of the auditor, having read the other information, are:
 - (a) To consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the financial report;
 - (b) To consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit;
 - (c) To respond appropriately when the auditor identifies that such material inconsistencies appear to exist, or when the auditor otherwise becomes aware that other information appears to be materially misstated; and
 - (d) To report in accordance with this Auditing Standard.

Definitions

12. For the purposes of this Auditing Standard, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:
 - (a) Annual report – A document, or combination of documents, prepared typically on an annual basis by management or those charged with governance in accordance with law, regulation or custom, the purpose of which is to provide owners (or similar stakeholders) with information on the entity's operations and the entity's financial results and financial position as set out in the financial report. An annual report contains or accompanies the financial report and the auditor's report thereon and usually includes information about the entity's developments, its future outlook and risks and uncertainties, a statement by the entity's governing body, and reports covering governance matters. (Ref: Para. A1–A5)

- (b) Misstatement of the other information – A misstatement of the other information exists when the other information is incorrectly stated or otherwise misleading (including because it omits or obscures information necessary for a proper understanding of a matter disclosed in the other information). (Ref: Para. A6–A7)
- (c) Other information – Financial or non-financial information (other than financial report and the auditor's report thereon) included in an entity's annual report. (Ref: Para. A8–A10)

Requirements

13. The auditor shall: (Ref: Para. A11–A22)
- (a) Determine, through discussion with management, which document(s) comprises the annual report, and the entity's planned manner and timing of the issuance of such document(s);
 - (b) Make appropriate arrangements with management to obtain in a timely manner and, if possible, prior to the date of the auditor's report, the final version of the document(s) comprising the annual report; and
 - (c) When some or all of the document(s) determined in (a) will not be available until after the date of the auditor's report, request management to provide a written representation that the final version of the document(s) will be provided to the auditor when available, and prior to its issuance by the entity, such that the auditor can complete the procedures required by this Auditing Standard. (Ref: Para. A22)

Reading and Considering the Other Information

14. The auditor shall read the other information and, in doing so shall: (Ref: Para. A23–A24)
- (a) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the financial report. As the basis for this consideration, the auditor shall, to evaluate their consistency, compare selected amounts or other items in the other information (that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial report) with such amounts or other items in the financial report; and (Ref: Para. A25–A29)
 - (b) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit, in the context of audit evidence obtained and conclusions reached in the audit. (Ref: Para. A30–A36)
15. While reading the other information in accordance with paragraph 14 of this Auditing Standard, the auditor shall remain alert for indications that the other information not related to the financial report or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit appears to be materially misstated. (Ref: Para. A24, A37–A38)

Responding When a Material Inconsistency Appears to Exist or Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated

16. If the auditor identifies that a material inconsistency appears to exist (or becomes aware that the other information appears to be materially misstated), the auditor shall discuss the matter with management and, if necessary, perform other procedures to conclude whether: (Ref: Para. A39–A43)
- (a) A material misstatement of the other information exists;
 - (b) A material misstatement of the financial report exists; or

- (c) The auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment needs to be updated.

Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement of the Other Information Exists

17. If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement of the other information exists, the auditor shall request management to correct the other information. If management:
- (a) Agrees to make the correction, the auditor shall determine that the correction has been made; or
 - (b) Refuses to make the correction, the auditor shall communicate the matter with those charged with governance and request that the correction be made.
18. If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement exists in other information obtained prior to the date of the auditor's report, and the other information is not corrected after communicating with those charged with governance, the auditor shall take appropriate action, including: (Ref: Para. A44)
- (a) Considering the implications for the auditor's report and communicating with those charged with governance about how the auditor plans to address the material misstatement in the auditor's report (see paragraph 22(e)(ii) of this Auditing Standard); or (Ref: Para. A45)
 - (b) Withdrawing from the engagement, where withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation. (Ref: Para. A46–A47)
19. If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement exists in other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report, the auditor shall:
- (a) If the other information is corrected, perform the procedures necessary in the circumstances; or (Ref: Para. A48)
 - (b) If the other information is not corrected after communicating with those charged with governance, take appropriate action considering the auditor's legal rights and obligations, to seek to have the uncorrected material misstatement appropriately brought to the attention of users for whom the auditor's report is prepared. (Ref: Para. A49–A50)

Responding When a Material Misstatement in the Financial Report Exists or the Auditor's Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment Needs to Be Updated

20. If, as a result of performing the procedures in paragraphs 14–15 of this Auditing Standard, the auditor concludes that a material misstatement in the financial report exists or the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment needs to be updated, the auditor shall respond appropriately in accordance with the other Australian Auditing Standards. (Ref: Para. A51)

Reporting

21. The auditor's report shall include a separate section with a heading "Other Information", or other appropriate heading, when, at the date of the auditor's report:
- (a) For an audit of a financial report of a listed entity, the auditor has obtained, or expects to obtain, the other information; or
 - (b) For an audit of a financial report of an entity other than a listed entity, the auditor has obtained some or all of the other information. (Ref: Para. A52)
22. When the auditor's report is required to include an Other Information section in accordance with paragraph 21 of this Auditing Standard, this section shall include: (Ref: Para. A53)

- (a) A statement that management is responsible for the other information;
 - (b) An identification of:
 - (i) Other information, if any, obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report; and
 - (ii) For an audit of financial report of a listed entity, other information, if any, expected to be obtained after the date of the auditor's report;
 - (c) A statement that the auditor's opinion does not cover the other information and, accordingly, that the auditor does not express (or will not express) an audit opinion or any form of assurance conclusion thereon;
 - (d) A description of the auditor's responsibilities relating to reading, considering and reporting on other information as required by this Auditing Standard; and
 - (e) When other information has been obtained prior to the date of the auditor's report, either:
 - (i) A statement that the auditor has nothing to report; or
 - (ii) If the auditor has concluded that there is an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information, a statement that describes the uncorrected material misstatement of the other information.
23. When the auditor expresses a qualified or adverse opinion in accordance with ASA 705,³ the auditor shall consider the implications of the matter giving rise to the modification of opinion for the statement required in paragraph 22(e) of this Auditing Standard. (Ref: Para. A54–A58)

Reporting Prescribed by Law or Regulation

24. If the auditor is required by law or regulation of a specific jurisdiction to refer to the other information in the auditor's report using a specific layout or wording, the auditor's report shall refer to Australian Auditing Standards only if the auditor's report includes, at a minimum: (Ref: Para. A59)
- (a) Identification of the other information obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report;
 - (b) A description of the auditor's responsibilities with respect to the other information; and
 - (c) An explicit statement addressing the outcome of the auditor's work for this purpose.

Documentation

25. In addressing the requirements of ASA 230⁴ as it applies to this Auditing Standard, the auditor shall include in the audit documentation:
- (a) Documentation of the procedures performed under this Auditing Standard; and
 - (b) The final version of the other information on which the auditor has performed the work required under this Auditing Standard.

* * *

³ See ASA 705 *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

⁴ See ASA 230 *Audit Documentation*, paragraphs 8–11.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definitions

Annual Report (Ref: Para. 12(a))

- A1. Law, regulation or custom may define the content of an annual report, and the name by which it is to be referred, for entities in a particular jurisdiction; however, the content and the name may vary within a jurisdiction and from one jurisdiction to another.
- A2. An annual report is typically prepared on an annual basis. However, when the financial report being audited is prepared for a period less than or more than a year, an annual report may also be prepared that covers the same period as the financial report.
- A3. In some cases, an entity's annual report may be a single document and referred to by the title "annual report" or by some other title. In other cases, law, regulation or custom may require the entity to report to owners (or similar stakeholders) information on the entity's operations and the entity's financial results and financial position as set out in the financial report (i.e., an annual report) by way of a single document, or by way of two or more separate documents that in combination serve the same purpose. For example, depending on law, regulation or custom in a particular jurisdiction, one or more of the following documents may form part of the annual report:
- Management report, management commentary, or operating and financial review or similar reports by those charged with governance (for example, a directors' report).
 - Chairman's statement.
 - Corporate governance statement.
 - Internal control and risk assessment reports.
- A4. An annual report may be made available to users in printed form, or electronically, including on the entity's website. A document (or combination of documents) may meet the definition of an annual report, irrespective of the manner in which it is made available to users.
- A5. An annual report is different in nature, purpose and content from other reports, such as a report prepared to meet the information needs of a specific stakeholder group or a report prepared to comply with a specific regulatory reporting objective (even when such a report is required to be publicly available). Examples of reports that, when issued as stand-alone documents, are not typically part of the combination of documents that comprise an annual report (subject to law, regulation or custom), and that, therefore, are not other information within the scope of this Auditing Standard, include:
- Separate industry or regulatory reports (for example, capital adequacy reports), such as may be prepared in the banking, insurance, and superannuation industries.
 - Corporate social responsibility reports.
 - Sustainability reports.
 - Diversity and equal opportunity reports.
 - Product responsibility reports.
 - Labour practices and working conditions reports.
 - Human rights reports.

Misstatement of the Other Information (Ref: Para. 12(b))

- A6. When a particular matter is disclosed in the other information, the other information may omit or obscure information that is necessary for a proper understanding of that matter. For example, if the other information purports to address the key performance indicators used by management, then omission of a key performance indicator used by management could indicate that the other information is misleading.
- A7. The concept of materiality may be discussed in a framework applicable to the other information and, if so, such a framework may provide a frame of reference for the auditor in making judgements about materiality under this Auditing Standard. In many cases, however, there may be no applicable framework that includes a discussion of the concept of materiality as it applies to the other information. In such circumstances, the following characteristics provide the auditor with a frame of reference in determining if a misstatement of the other information is material:
- Materiality is considered in the context of the common information needs of users as a group. The users of the other information are expected to be the same as the users of the financial report as such users may be expected to read the other information to provide context to the financial report.
 - Judgements about materiality take into account the specific circumstances of the misstatement, considering whether users would be influenced by the effect of the uncorrected misstatement. Not all misstatements will influence the economic decisions of users.
 - Judgements about materiality involve both qualitative and quantitative considerations. Accordingly, such judgements may take into account the nature or magnitude of the items that the other information addresses in the context of the entity's annual report.

Other Information (Ref: Para. 12(c))

- A8. Appendix 1 contains examples of amounts or other items that may be included in the other information.
- A9. In some cases, the applicable financial reporting framework may require specific disclosures but permit them to be located outside of the financial report.⁵ As such disclosures are required by the applicable financial reporting framework, they form part of the financial report. Accordingly, they do not constitute other information for the purpose of this Auditing Standard.
- A10. eXtensible Business Reporting Language (XBRL) tags do not represent other information as defined in this Auditing Standard.

Obtaining the Other Information (Ref: Para. 13)

- A11. Determining the document(s) that is or comprises the annual report is often clear based on law, regulation or custom. In many cases, management or those charged with governance may have customarily issued a package of documents that together comprise the annual report, or may have committed to do so. In some cases, however, it may not be clear which document(s) is or comprises the annual report. In such cases, the timing and purpose of the documents (and for whom they are intended) are matters that may be relevant to the auditor's determination of which document(s) is or comprises the annual report.

⁵ For example, International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) 7, *Financial Instruments: Disclosures*, permits certain disclosures required by the IFRSs to either be given in the financial statements or incorporated by cross-reference from the financial statements to some other statement, such as a management commentary or risk report, that is available to users of the financial statements on the same terms as the financial statements and at the same time.

- A12. When the annual report is translated into other languages pursuant to law or regulation (such as may occur when a jurisdiction has more than one official language), or when multiple “annual reports” are prepared under different legislation (for example, when an entity is listed in more than one jurisdiction), consideration may need to be given as to whether one, or more than one of the “annual reports” form part of the other information. Law or regulation may provide further guidance in this respect.
- A13. Management, or those charged with governance, is responsible for preparing the annual report. The auditor may communicate with management or those charged with governance:
- The auditor’s expectations in relation to obtaining the final version of the annual report (including a combination of documents that together comprise the annual report) in a timely manner prior to the date of the auditor’s report such that the auditor can complete the procedures required by this Auditing Standard before the date of the auditor’s report, or if that is not possible, as soon as practicable and in any case prior to the entity’s issuance of such information.
 - The possible implications when the other information is obtained after the date of the auditor’s report.
- A14. The communications referred to in paragraph A13 may be particularly appropriate for example:
- In an initial audit engagement.
 - When there has been a change in management or those charged with governance.
 - When other information is expected to be obtained after the date of the auditor’s report.
- A15. Where those charged with governance are to approve the other information prior to its issuance by the entity, the final version of such other information is the one that has been approved by those charged with governance for issuance.
- A16. In some cases, the entity’s annual report may be a single document to be released, in accordance with law or regulation or the entity’s reporting practice, shortly after the entity’s financial reporting period such that it is available to the auditor prior to the date of the auditor’s report. In other cases, such a document may not be required to be released until a later time, or at a time of the entity’s choosing. There may also be circumstances when the entity’s annual report is a combination of documents, each subject to different requirements or reporting practice by the entity with respect to the timing of their release.
- A17. There may be circumstances when, at the date of the auditor’s report, the entity is considering the development of a document that may be part of the entity’s annual report (for example, a voluntary report to stakeholders) but management is unable to confirm to the auditor the purpose or timing of such a document. If the auditor is unable to ascertain the purpose or timing of such a document, the document is not considered other information for purposes of this Auditing Standard.
- A18. Obtaining the other information in a timely manner prior to the date of the auditor’s report enables any revisions that are found to be necessary to be made to the financial report, the auditor’s report, or the other information prior to their issuance. The audit engagement letter⁶ may make reference to an agreement with management to make available to the auditor the other information in a timely manner, and if possible prior to the date of the auditor’s report.

⁶ See ASA 210 *Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements*, paragraph A23.

- A19. When other information is only made available to users via the entity's website, the version of the other information obtained from the entity, rather than directly from the entity's website, is the relevant document on which the auditor would perform procedures in accordance with this Auditing Standard. The auditor has no responsibility under this Auditing Standard to search for other information, including other information that may be on the entity's website, nor to perform any procedures to confirm that other information is appropriately displayed on the entity's website or otherwise has been appropriately transmitted or displayed electronically.
- A20. The auditor is not precluded from dating or issuing the auditor's report if the auditor has not obtained some or all of the other information.
- A21. When the other information is obtained after the date of the auditor's report, the auditor is not required to update the procedures performed in accordance with paragraphs 6 and 7 of ASA 560⁷
- A22. ASA 580⁸ establishes requirements and provides guidance on the use of written representations. The written representation required to be requested by paragraph 13(c) regarding other information that will be available only after the date of the auditor's report is intended to support the auditor's ability to complete the procedures required by this Auditing Standard with respect to such information. In addition, the auditor may find it useful to request other written representations, for example, that:
- Management has informed the auditor of all the documents that it expects to issue that may comprise other information;
 - The financial report and any other information obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report is consistent with one another, and the other information does not contain any material misstatements; and
 - With regard to other information that has not been obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report, that management intends to prepare and issue such other information and the expected timing of such issuance.

Reading and Considering the Other Information (Ref: Para. 14–15)

- A23. The auditor is required by ASA 200⁹ to plan and perform the audit with professional scepticism. Maintaining professional scepticism when reading and considering the other information includes, for example, recognising that management may be overly optimistic about the success of its plans, and being alert to information that may be inconsistent with:
- (a) The financial report; or
 - (b) The auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit.
- A24. In accordance with ASA 220¹⁰ the engagement partner is required to take responsibility for the direction, supervision and performance of the audit engagement in compliance with professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements. In the context of this Auditing Standard, factors that may be taken into account when determining the appropriate engagement team members to address the requirements of paragraphs 14–15, include:
- The relative experience of engagement team members.

⁷ See ASA 560 *Subsequent Events*.

⁸ See ASA 580 *Written Representations*.

⁹ See ASA 200, paragraph 15.

¹⁰ See ASA 220 *Quality Control for an Audit of a Financial Report and Other Historical Financial Information*, paragraph 15(a).

- Whether the engagement team members to be assigned the tasks have the relevant knowledge obtained in the audit to identify inconsistencies between the other information and that knowledge.
- The degree of judgement involved in addressing the requirements of paragraph 14–15. For example, performing procedures to evaluate the consistency of amounts in the other information that are intended to be the same as amounts in the financial report may be carried out by less experienced engagement team members.
- Whether, in the case of a group audit, it is necessary to make enquiries of a component auditor in addressing the other information related to that component.

Considering Whether There is a Material Inconsistency between the Other Information and the Financial Report (Ref: Para. 14(a))

- A25. Other information may include amounts or other items that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial report. Examples of such amounts or other items may include:
- Tables, charts or graphs containing extracts of the financial report.
 - A disclosure providing greater detail about a balance or account shown in the financial report, such as “Revenue for 20X1 comprised XXX million from product X and YYY million from product Y.”
 - Descriptions of the financial results, such as “Total research and development expense was XXX in 20X1.”
- A26. In evaluating the consistency of selected amounts or other items in the other information with the financial report, the auditor is not required to compare all amounts or other items in the other information that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial report, with such amounts or other items in the financial report.
- A27. Selecting the amounts or other items to compare is a matter of professional judgement. Factors relevant to this judgement include:
- The significance of the amount or other item in the context in which it is presented, which may affect the importance that users would attach to the amount or other item (for example, a key ratio or amount).
 - If quantitative, the relative size of the amount compared with accounts or items in the financial report or the other information to which they relate.
 - The sensitivity of the particular amount or other item in the other information, for example, share based payments for senior management.
- A28. Determining the nature and extent of procedures to address the requirement in paragraph 14(a) is a matter of professional judgement, recognising that the auditor’s responsibilities under this Auditing Standard do not constitute an assurance engagement on the other information or impose an obligation to obtain assurance about the other information. Examples of such procedures include:
- For information that is intended to be the same as information in the financial report, comparing the information to the financial report.
 - For information intended to convey the same meaning as disclosures in the financial report, comparing the words used and considering the significance of differences in wording used and whether such differences imply different meanings.

- Obtaining a reconciliation between an amount within the other information and the financial report from management and:
 - Comparing items in the reconciliation to the financial report and the other information; and
 - Checking whether the calculations within the reconciliation are arithmetically accurate.
- A29. Evaluating the consistency of selected amounts or other items in the other information with the financial report includes, when relevant given the nature of the other information, the manner of their presentation compared to the financial report.

Considering Whether There Is a Material Inconsistency between the Other Information and the Auditor's Knowledge Obtained in the Audit (Ref: Para. 14(b))

- A30. Other information may include amounts or items that are related to the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit (other than those in paragraph 14(a)). Examples of such amounts or items may include:
- A disclosure of the units produced, or a table summarising such production by geographical region.
 - A statement that "The company introduced product X and product Y during the year."
 - A summary of the locations of the entity's major operations, such as "the entity's major centre of operation is in country X, and there are also operations in countries Y and Z."
- A31. The auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit includes the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control, obtained in accordance with ASA 315¹¹. ASA 315 sets out the auditor's required understanding, which includes such matters as obtaining an understanding of:
- (a) The relevant industry, regulatory, and other external factors;
 - (b) The nature of the entity;
 - (c) The entity's selection and application of accounting policies;
 - (d) The entity's objectives and strategies;
 - (e) The measurement and review of the entity's financial performance; and
 - (f) The entity's internal control.
- A32. The auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit may also include matters that are prospective in nature. Such matters may include, for example, business prospects and future cash flows that the auditor considered when evaluating the assumptions used by management in performing impairment tests on intangible assets such as goodwill, or when evaluating management's assessment of the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.
- A33. In considering whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit, the auditor may focus on those matters in the other information that are of sufficient importance that a misstatement of the other information in relation to that matter could be material.

¹¹ See ASA 315 *Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment*, paragraphs 11–12.

- A34. In relation to many matters in the other information, the auditor's recollection of the audit evidence obtained and conclusions reached in the audit may be sufficient to enable the auditor to consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit. The more experienced and the more familiar with the key aspects of the audit the auditor is, the more likely it is that the auditor's recollection of relevant matters will be sufficient. For example, the auditor may be able to consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit in light of the auditor's recollection of discussions held with management or those charged with governance or findings from procedures carried out during the audit such as the reading of board minutes, without the need to take further action.
- A35. The auditor may determine that referring to relevant audit documentation or making enquiries of relevant members of the engagement team or relevant component auditors is appropriate as a basis for the auditor's consideration of whether a material inconsistency exists. For example:
- When the other information describes the planned cessation of a major product line and, although the auditor is aware of the planned cessation, the auditor may make enquiries of the relevant engagement team member who performed the audit procedures in this area to support the auditor's consideration of whether the description is materially inconsistent with the auditor's knowledge obtained during the audit.
 - When the other information describes important details of a lawsuit addressed in the audit, but the auditor cannot recall them adequately, it may be necessary to refer to the audit documentation where such details are summarised to support the auditor's recollection.
- A36. Whether, and if so the extent to which, the auditor refers to relevant audit documentation, or makes enquiries of relevant members of the engagement team or relevant component auditors is a matter of professional judgement. However, it may not be necessary for the auditor to refer to relevant audit documentation, or to make enquiries of relevant members of the engagement team or relevant component auditors about any matter included in the other information.

Remaining Alert for Other Indications that the Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated (Ref: Para. 15)

- A37. Other information may include discussion of matters that are not related to the financial report and may also extend beyond the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit. For example, the other information may include statements about the entity's greenhouse gas emissions.
- A38. Remaining alert for other indications that the other information not related to the financial report or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit appears to be materially misstated assists the auditor in complying with relevant ethical requirements that require the auditor to avoid being knowingly associated with other information that the auditor believes contains a materially false or misleading statement, a statement furnished recklessly, or omits or obscures necessary information such that the other information is misleading.^{12*} Remaining alert for other indications that the other information appears to be materially misstated could potentially result in the auditor identifying such matters as:
- Differences between the other information and the general knowledge, apart from the knowledge obtained in the audit, of the engagement team member reading the other information that lead the auditor to believe that the other information appears to be materially misstated; or

¹² [Deleted by the AUASB. Refer footnote *]
* Refer ASA 102.

- An internal inconsistency in the other information that leads the auditor to believe that the other information appears to be materially misstated.

Responding When a Material Inconsistency Appears to Exist or Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated (Ref: Para. 16)

- A39. The auditor's discussion with management about a material inconsistency (or other information that appears to be materially misstated) may include requesting management to provide support for the basis of management's statements in the other information. Based on management's further information or explanations, the auditor may be satisfied that the other information is not materially misstated. For example, management explanations may indicate reasonable and sufficient grounds for valid differences of judgement.
- A40. Conversely, the discussion with management may provide further information that supports the auditor's conclusion that a material misstatement of the other information exists.
- A41. It may be more difficult for the auditor to challenge management on matters of judgement than on those of a more factual nature. However, there may be circumstances where the auditor concludes that the other information contains a statement that is not consistent with the financial report or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit. These circumstances may raise doubt about the other information, the financial report, or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit.
- A42. As there is a wide range of possible material misstatements of the other information, the nature and extent of other procedures the auditor may perform to conclude whether a material misstatement of the other information exists are matters of the auditor's professional judgement in the circumstances.
- A43. When a matter is unrelated to the financial report or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit, the auditor may not be able to fully assess management's responses to the auditor's enquiries. Nevertheless, based on management's further information or explanations, or following changes made by management to the other information, the auditor may be satisfied that a material inconsistency no longer appears to exist or that the other information no longer appears to be materially misstated. When the auditor is unable to conclude that a material inconsistency no longer appears to exist or that the other information no longer appears to be materially misstated, the auditor may request management to consult with a qualified third party (for example, a management's expert or legal counsel). In certain cases, after considering the responses from management's consultation, the auditor may not be able to conclude whether or not a material misstatement of the other information exists. Actions the auditor may then take include one or more of the following:
- Obtaining advice from the auditor's legal counsel;
 - Considering the implications for the auditor's report for example, whether to describe the circumstances when there is a limitation imposed by management; or
 - Withdrawing from the audit, where withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation.

Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement of the Other Information Exists

Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement Exists in Other Information Obtained prior to the Date of the Auditor's Report (Ref: Para. 18)

- A44. The actions the auditor takes if the other information is not corrected after communicating with those charged with governance are a matter of the auditor's professional judgement. The auditor may take into account whether the rationale given by management and those charged with governance for not making the correction raises doubt about the integrity or honesty of

management or those charged with governance, such as when the auditor suspects an intention to mislead. The auditor may also consider it appropriate to seek legal advice. In some cases, the auditor may be required by law, regulation or other professional standards to communicate the matter to a regulator or relevant professional body.

Reporting Implications (Ref: Para. 18(a))

- A45. In rare circumstances, a disclaimer of opinion on the financial report may be appropriate when the refusal to correct the material misstatement of the other information casts such doubt on the integrity of management and those charged with governance as to call into question the reliability of audit evidence in general.

Withdrawal from the Engagement (Ref: Para. 18(b))

- A46. Withdrawal from the engagement, where withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation, may be appropriate when the circumstances surrounding the refusal to correct the material misstatement of the other information cast such doubt on the integrity of management and those charged with governance as to call into question the reliability of representations obtained from them during the audit.

Considerations specific to public sector entities (Ref: Para. 18(b))

- A47. In the public sector, withdrawal from the engagement may not be possible. In such cases, the auditor may issue a report to the legislature providing details of the matter or may take other appropriate actions.

Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement Exists in Other Information Obtained after the Date of the Auditor's Report (Ref: Para. 19)

- A48. If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement exists in other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report, and such a material misstatement has been corrected, the auditor's procedures necessary in the circumstances include determining that the correction has been made (in accordance with paragraph 17(a)) and may include reviewing the steps taken by management to communicate with those in receipt of the other information, if previously issued, to inform them of the revision.
- A49. If those charged with governance do not agree to revise the other information, taking appropriate action to seek to have the uncorrected misstatement appropriately brought to the attention of users for whom the auditor's report is prepared requires the exercise of professional judgement, and may be affected by relevant law or regulation in the jurisdiction. Accordingly, the auditor may consider it appropriate to seek legal advice about the auditor's legal rights and obligations.
- A50. When a material misstatement of the other information remains uncorrected, appropriate actions that the auditor may take to seek to have the uncorrected material misstatement appropriately brought to the attention of users for whom the auditor's report is prepared, when permitted by law or regulation, include, for example:
- Providing a new or amended auditor's report to management including a modified section in accordance with paragraph 22, and requesting management to provide this new or amended auditor's report to users for whom the auditor's report is prepared. In doing so, the auditor may need to consider the effect, if any, on the date of the new or amended auditor's report, in view of the requirements of the ASAs or applicable law or regulation. The auditor may also review the steps taken by management to provide the new or amended auditor's report to such users;
 - Bringing the material misstatement of the other information to the attention of the users for whom the auditor's report is prepared (for example, by addressing the matter in a general meeting of shareholders);

- Communicating with a regulator or relevant professional body about the uncorrected material misstatement; or
- Considering the implications for engagement continuance (see also paragraph A46).

Responding When a Material Misstatement in the Financial Report Exists or the Auditor's Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment Needs to Be Updated (Ref: Para. 20)

A51. In reading the other information, the auditor may become aware of new information that has implications for:

- The auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment and, accordingly, may indicate the need to revise the auditor's risk assessment¹³
- The auditor's responsibility to evaluate the effect of identified misstatements on the audit and of uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial report.¹⁴
- The auditor's responsibilities relating to subsequent events.¹⁵

Reporting (Ref: Para. 21–24)

A52. For an audit of a financial report of an entity other than a listed entity, the auditor may consider that the identification in the auditor's report of other information that the auditor expects to obtain after the date of the auditor's report would be appropriate in order to provide additional transparency about the other information that is subject to the auditor's responsibilities under this Auditing Standard. The auditor may consider it appropriate to do so, for example, when management is able to represent to the auditor that such other information will be issued after the date of the auditor's report.

Illustrative Statements (Ref: Para. 21–22)

A53. Illustrative examples of the "Other Information" section of the auditor's report are included in Appendix 2.

Reporting Implications When the Auditor's Opinion on the Financial Report Is Qualified or Adverse (Ref: Para. 23)

A54. A qualified or adverse auditor's opinion on the financial report may not have an impact on the statement required by paragraph 22(e) if the matter in respect of which the auditor's opinion has been modified is not included or otherwise addressed in the other information and the matter does not affect any part of the other information. For example, a qualified opinion on the financial report because of non-disclosure of directors' remuneration as required by the applicable financial reporting framework may have no implications for the reporting required under this Auditing Standard. In other circumstances, there may be implications for such reporting as described in paragraphs A55–A58.

Qualified Opinion Due to a Material Misstatement in the Financial Report

A55. In circumstances when the auditor's opinion is qualified, consideration may be given as to whether the other information is also materially misstated for the same matter as, or a related matter to, the matter giving rise to the qualified opinion on the financial report.

¹³ See ASA 315, paragraphs 11, 31, and A1.

¹⁴ See ASA 450 *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit*.

¹⁵ See ASA 560, paragraphs 10 and 14.

Qualified Opinion Due to Limitation of Scope

- A56. When there is a limitation of scope with respect to a material item in the financial report, the auditor will not have obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence about that matter. In these circumstances, the auditor may be unable to conclude whether or not the amounts or other items in the other information related to this matter result in a material misstatement of the other information. Accordingly, the auditor may need to modify the statement required by paragraph 22(e) to refer to the auditor's inability to consider management's description of the matter in the other information in respect of which the auditor's opinion on the financial report has been qualified as explained in the Basis for Qualified Opinion paragraph. The auditor is nevertheless required to report any other uncorrected material misstatements of the other information that have been identified.

Adverse Opinion

- A57. An adverse opinion on the financial report relating to a specific matter(s) described in the Basis for Adverse Opinion paragraph does not justify the omission of reporting of material misstatements of the other information that the auditor has identified in the auditor's report in accordance with paragraph 22(e)(ii). When an adverse opinion has been expressed on the financial report, the auditor may need to appropriately modify the statement required by paragraph 22(e) for example, to indicate that amounts or items in the other information is materially misstated for the same matter as, or a related matter to, the matter giving rise to the adverse opinion on the financial report.

Disclaimer of Opinion

- A58. When the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial report, providing further details about the audit, including a section to address other information may overshadow the disclaimer of opinion on the financial report as a whole. Accordingly, in those circumstances, as required by ASA 705 the auditor's report does not include a section addressing the reporting requirements under this Auditing Standard.

Reporting Prescribed by Law or Regulation (Ref: Para. 24)

- A59. ASA 200¹⁶ explains that the auditor may be required to comply with legal or regulatory requirements in addition to the Australian Auditing Standards. Where this is the case, the auditor may be obliged to use a specific layout or wording in the auditor's report that differs from that described in this Auditing Standard. Consistency in the auditor's report, when the audit has been conducted in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards, promotes credibility in the global marketplace by making more readily identifiable those audits that have been conducted in accordance with globally recognised standards. When the differences between the legal or regulatory requirements to report with respect to the other information and this Auditing Standard relate only to the layout and wording in the auditor's report and, at a minimum, each of the elements identified in paragraph 24 is included in the auditor's report, the auditor's report may refer to Australian Auditing Standards. Accordingly, in such circumstances the auditor is considered to have complied with the requirements of this Auditing Standard, even when the layout and wording used in the auditor's report is specified by legal or regulatory reporting requirements.

¹⁶ See ASA 200, paragraph A55.

Appendix 1

(Ref: Para. 14, A8)

EXAMPLES OF AMOUNTS OR OTHER ITEMS THAT MAY BE INCLUDED IN THE OTHER INFORMATION

The following are examples of amounts and other items that may be included in other information. This list is not intended to be exhaustive.

Amounts

- Items in a summary of key financial results, such as net income, earnings per share, dividends, sales and other operating revenues, and purchases and operating expenses.
- Selected operating data, such as income from continuing operations by major operating area, or sales by geographical segment or product line.
- Special items, such as asset dispositions, litigation provisions, asset impairments, tax adjustments, environmental remediation provisions, and restructuring and reorganisation expenses.
- Liquidity and capital resource information, such as cash, cash equivalents and marketable securities; dividends; and debt, capital lease and minority interest obligations.
- Capital expenditures by segment or division.
- Amounts involved in, and related financial effects of, off-balance sheet arrangements.
- Amounts involved in guarantees, contractual obligations, legal or environmental claims, and other contingencies.
- Financial measures or ratios, such as gross margin, return on average capital employed, return on average shareholders' equity, current ratio, interest coverage ratio and debt ratio. Some of these may be directly reconcilable to the financial report.

Other Items

- Explanations of critical accounting estimates and related assumptions.
- Identification of related parties and descriptions of transactions with them.
- Articulation of the entity's policies or approach to manage commodity, foreign exchange or interest rate risks, such as through the use of forward contracts, interest rate swaps, or other financial instruments.
- Descriptions of the nature of off-balance sheet arrangements.
- Descriptions of guarantees, indemnifications, contractual obligations, litigation or environmental liability cases, and other contingencies, including management's qualitative assessments of the entity's related exposures.
- Descriptions of changes in legal or regulatory requirements, such as new tax or environmental regulations, that have materially impacted the entity's operations or fiscal position, or will have a material impact on the entity's future financial prospects.
- Management's qualitative assessments of the impacts of new financial reporting standards that have come into effect during the period, or will come into effect in the following period, on the entity's financial results, financial position and cash flows.

- General descriptions of the business environment and outlook.
- Overview of strategy.
- Descriptions of trends in market prices of key commodities or raw materials.
- Contrasts of supply, demand and regulatory circumstances between geographic regions.
- Explanations of specific factors influencing the entity's profitability in specific segments.

Draft

Appendix 2

(Ref: Para. 21–22, A53)

Illustrations of Auditor's Reports Relating to Other Information

- Illustration 1: [Deleted by the AUASB. Refer [Aus] Illustration 1A]
- [Aus] Illustration 1A: An auditor's report of a listed company, containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Illustration 2: [Deleted by the AUASB. Refer [Aus] Illustration 2A]
- [Aus] Illustration 2A: An auditor's report of a listed company containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Illustration 3: An auditor's report of an entity other than a listed entity containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Illustration 4: [Deleted by the AUASB. Refer [Aus] Illustration 4A]
- [Aus] Illustration 4A: An auditor's report of a listed company containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained no other information prior to the date of the auditor's report but expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Illustration 5: [Deleted by the AUASB. Refer [Aus] Illustration 5A]
- [Aus] Illustration 5A: An auditor's report of a listed company containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has concluded that a material misstatement of the other information exists.
- Illustration 6: [Deleted by the AUASB. Refer [Aus] Illustration 6A]
- [Aus] Illustration 6A: An auditor's report of a listed company containing a qualified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and there is a limitation of scope with respect to a material item in the consolidated financial report which also affects the other information.
- Illustration 7: [Deleted by the AUASB. Refer [Aus] Illustration 7A]
- [Aus] Illustration 7A: An auditor's report of a listed company containing an adverse opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the adverse opinion on the consolidated financial report also affects the other information.

Example Auditor's Report
Single Company-*Corporations Act 2001*
Unmodified opinion - all the Other Information obtained
(Fair Presentation Framework)

[Aus] Illustration 1A

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a single listed company's financial report. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ASA 600* does not apply).
- The financial report is prepared by the directors of the company in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework) and under the *Corporations Act 2001*.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of the directors' responsibility for the financial report in ASA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the company's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570.#
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ASA 701.†
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial report.
- In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under section 308(3C) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

* See ASA 600 *Special Considerations—Audits of a Group Financial Report (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*.

See ASA 570 *Going Concern*.

† See ASA 701 *Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor's Report*. The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Report*

Opinion

We have audited the financial report of ABC Company Ltd., (the Company), which comprises the statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies and the directors' declaration.

In our opinion:

the accompanying financial report of ABC Company Ltd. is in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, including:

- (a) Giving a true and fair view of the company's financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and of its performance for the year then ended on that date; and
- (b) Complying with Australian Accounting Standards and the *Corporations Regulations 2001*.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001* and the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia. We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code.

We confirm that the independence declaration required by the *Corporations Act 2001*, which has been given to the directors of ABC Company Ltd., would be in the same terms if giving to the directors as at the time of this auditor's report.*

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

[Key Audit Matters][#]

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgement, were of most significance in our audit of the financial report of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial report as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ASA 701.]

* The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Report" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

* Or, alternatively, include statements (a) to the effect that circumstances have changed since the declaration was given to the relevant directors; and (b) setting out how the declaration would differ if it had been given to the relevant directors at the time the auditor's report was made. [Section 307C (5A)(d) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.]

[#] The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as “Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

The Directors’ are responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,[§] but does not include the financial report and our auditor’s report thereon.]

Our opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit or otherwise appears to be materially misstated. If, based on the work we have performed, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. We have nothing to report in this regard.

Directors’ Responsibilities for the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700[#] – see [Aus] Illustration 1 in ASA 700.]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1 in ASA 700.]

Report on the Remuneration Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1 in ASA 700.][Auditor’s name and signature][§]

[Date of the auditor’s report]

[Auditor’s Address]

[§] A more specific description of the other information, such as “the management report and chairman’s statement,” may be used to identify the other information.

[#] See ASA 700 *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on a Financial Report*.

[§] The auditor is required, under the *Corporations Act 2001*, to sign the auditor’s report in both their own name and the name of their firm [section 324AB(3)] or the name of the audit company [section 324AD(1)], as applicable.

Example Auditor's Report
Single Company-Corporations Act 2001
Unmodified opinion - part of the Other Information obtained
(Fair Presentation Framework)

[Aus] Illustration 2A

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a single listed company's financial report. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ASA 600 does not apply).
- The financial report is prepared by the directors of the company in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework) and under the *Corporations Act 2001*.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of the directors' responsibility for the financial report in ASA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the company's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ASA 701.
- The auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial report.
- In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under section 308(3C) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Report*

Opinion

We have audited the financial report of ABC Company (the Company), which comprises the statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of

* The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Report" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies and the directors' declaration.

In our opinion:

the accompanying financial report of ABC Company Ltd., is in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, including:

- (a) Giving a true and fair view of the company's financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and of its performance for the year then ended on that date; and
- (b) Complying with Australian Accounting Standards and the *Corporations Regulations 2001*.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001* and the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia. We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code.

We confirm that the independence declaration required by the *Corporations Act 2001*, which has been given to the directors of ABC Company Ltd., would be in the same terms if giving to the directors as at the time of this auditor's report.*

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgement, were of most significance in our audit of the financial report of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial report as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ASA 701.]

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

The Directors are responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the X report[#] (but does not include the financial report and our auditor's report thereon), which we obtained prior to the date of this auditor's report, and the Y report, which is expected to be made available to us after that date.

Our opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information and we do not and will not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information identified above and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit, or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

* Or, alternatively, include statements (a) to the effect that circumstances have changed since the declaration was given to the relevant directors; and (b) setting out how the declaration would differ if it had been given to the relevant directors at the time the auditor's report was made. [Section 307C (5A)(d) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.]

[#] A more specific description of the other information, such as "the management report and chair's statement," may be used to identify the other information.

If, based on the work we have performed on the other information that we obtained prior to the date of this auditor's report, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. We have nothing to report in this regard.

[When we read the Y report, if we conclude that there is a material misstatement therein, we are required to communicate the matter to the directors and *[describe actions applicable]*¹⁷

Directors' Responsibilities for the Financial Report*

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1 in ASA 700.]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1 in ASA 700.]

Report on the Remuneration Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1 in ASA 700.]

[Auditor's name and signature][#]

[Date of the auditor's report]

[Auditor's address]

¹⁷ This additional paragraph may be useful when the auditor has identified an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report and has a legal obligation to take specific action in response.

* Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction.

[#] The auditor is required, under the *Corporations Act 2001*, to sign the auditor's report in both their own name and the name of their firm [section 324AB(3)] or the name of the audit company [section 324AD(1)], as applicable.

Illustration 3 – An auditor's report of an entity other than a listed company containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a financial report of an entity other than a listed company using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ASA 600 does not apply).
- The financial report is prepared by management of the entity in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial report in ASA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570.
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ASA 701.
- The auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial report.
- The auditor has no other reporting responsibilities required under law or regulation.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Entity [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Opinion

We have audited the financial report of ABC Entity (the Entity), which comprises the statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies and the declaration by those charged with governance.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial report presents fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Entity as at 30 June 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards.

* Or other applicable assertion by management or those charged with governance.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report* section of our report. We are independent of the Entity in accordance with the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia. We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

Management¹⁸ is responsible for the other information. The other information obtained at the date of this auditor's report is [information included in the X report,¹⁹ but does not include the financial report and our auditor's report thereon].

Our opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit, or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

If, based on the work we have performed on the other information obtained prior to the date of this auditor's report, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. We have nothing to report in this regard.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Report²⁰

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see Illustration 3 in ASA 700.]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see Illustration 3 in ASA 700.]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor's Address]

[Date]

¹⁸ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction.

¹⁹ A more specific description of the other information, such as "the management report and chair's statement," may be used to identify the other information.

²⁰ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction.

Example Auditor's Report
Single Company-*Corporations Act 2001*
Unmodified opinion – No Other Information obtained
(Fair Presentation Framework)

[Aus] Illustration 4A

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a financial report of a single listed company using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ASA 600 does not apply).
- The financial report is prepared by the directors of the company in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework) and under the *Corporations Act 2001*.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of the directors' responsibility for the financial report in ASA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The auditor has obtained no other information prior to the date of the auditor's report but expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the company's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ASA 701.
- The auditor has obtained no other information prior to the date of the auditor's report but expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial report.
- In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under section 308(3C) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Report^{*}

Opinion

We have audited the financial report of ABC Company (the Company), which comprises the statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies and the directors' declaration.

^{*} The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Report" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

In our opinion:

the accompanying financial report of ABC Company Ltd., is in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, including:

- (a) Giving a true and fair view of the company's financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and of its performance for the year then ended on that date; and
- (b) Complying with Australian Accounting Standards and the *Corporations Regulations 2001*.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001* and the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia. We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code.

We confirm that the independence declaration required by the *Corporations Act 2001*, which has been given to the directors of ABC Company Ltd., would be in the same terms if giving to the directors as at the time of this auditor's report.*

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgement, were of most significance in our audit of the financial report of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial report as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ASA 701.]

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

The Directors are responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,[#] but does not include the financial report and our auditor's report thereon]. The X report is expected to be made available to us after the date of this auditor's report.

Our opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information and we will not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information identified above when it becomes available and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit, or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

* Or, alternatively, include statements (a) to the effect that circumstances have changed since the declaration was given to the relevant directors; and (b) setting out how the declaration would differ if it had been given to the relevant directors at the time the auditor's report was made. [Section 307C (5A)(d) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.]

[#] A more specific description of the other information, such as "the management report and chair's statement," may be used to identify the other information.

[When we read the X report, if we conclude that there is a material misstatement therein, we are required to communicate the matter to the directors and *[describe actions applicable]*.^{*}

Directors' Responsibilities for the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1A in ASA 700.]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1A in ASA 700.]

Report on the Remuneration Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1A in ASA 700.]

[Auditor's name and signature][#]

[Date of the auditor's report]

[Auditor's address]

Draft

^{*} This additional paragraph may be useful when the auditor has identified an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report and has a legal obligation to take specific action in response.

[#] The auditor is required, under the *Corporations Act 2001*, to sign the auditor's report in both their own name and the name of their firm [section 324AB(3)] or the name of the audit company [section 324AD(1)], as applicable.

Example Auditor's Report
Single Company-*Corporations Act 2001*
Unmodified opinion – All Other Information obtained; material misstatement
(Fair Presentation Framework)

[Aus] Illustration 5A

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a single listed company's financial report. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ASA 600 does not apply).
- The financial report is prepared by the directors of the company in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework) and under the *Corporations Act 2001*.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of the directors' responsibility for the financial report in ASA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has concluded that a material misstatement of the other information exists.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the company's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ASA 701.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial report.
- In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under section 308(3C) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Opinion

We have audited the financial report of ABC Company (the Company), which comprises the statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies and the directors' declaration.

In our opinion:

the accompanying financial report of ABC Company Ltd., is in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, including:

- (a) Giving a true and fair view of the company's financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and of its performance for the year then ended on that date; and
- (b) Complying with Australian Accounting Standards and the *Corporations Regulations 2001*.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001* and the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia. We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code.

We confirm that the independence declaration required by the *Corporations Act 2001*, which has been given to the directors of ABC Company Ltd., would be in the same terms if giving to the directors as at the time of this auditor's report.*

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

The Directors are responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,[#] but does not include the financial report and our auditor's report thereon.]

Our opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

If, based on the work we have performed, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. As described below, we have concluded that such a material misstatement of the other information exists.

[Description of material misstatement of the other information]

[Key Audit Matters][†]

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgement, were of most significance in our audit of the financial report of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial report as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ASA 701.]

Directors' Responsibilities for the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1A in ASA 700.]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1A in ASA 700.]

* Or, alternatively, include statements (a) to the effect that circumstances have changed since the declaration was given to the relevant directors; and (b) setting out how the declaration would differ if it had been given to the relevant directors at the time the auditor's report was made. [Section 307C (5A)(d) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.]

A more specific description of the other information, such as "the management report and chairman's statement," may be used to identify the other information.

† The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

Report on the Remuneration Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1A in ASA 700.]

*[Auditor's name and signature]**

[Date of the auditor's report]

[Auditor's address]

Draft

* The auditor is required, under the *Corporations Act 2001*, to sign the auditor's report in both their own name and the name of their firm [section 324AB(3)] or the name of the audit company [section 324AD(1)], as applicable.

Example Auditor's Report
Consolidated Entity-*Corporations Act 2001*
Qualified opinion that affects the Other Information obtained
(Fair Presentation Framework)

[Aus] Illustration 6A:

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a consolidated financial report of a listed company. The audit is a group audit (i.e., ASA 600 applies).
- The financial report is prepared by the directors of the company in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework) and under the *Corporations Act 2001*. The directors have elected to report only the consolidated financial position and financial results in the primary financial statements.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of the directors' responsibility for the financial report in ASA 210.
- The auditor was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding an investment in a foreign associate. The possible effects of the inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence are deemed to be material but not pervasive to the financial report (i.e., a qualified opinion is appropriate).
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the company's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ASA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the qualified opinion on the financial report also affects the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial report.
- In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under section 308(3C) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Qualified Opinion

We have audited the financial report of ABC Company Ltd., (the Company), including its subsidiaries (the Group), which comprises the consolidated statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, the consolidated statement of comprehensive income, consolidated statement of changes in equity and consolidated statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies and the directors' declaration of the Company.

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

In our opinion except for the possible effects of the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report:

the accompanying financial report of ABC Company Ltd., is in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, including:

- (a) Giving a true and fair view of the Group's consolidated financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and of its consolidated performance for the year then ended on that date; and
- (b) Complying with Australian Accounting Standards and the *Corporations Regulations 2001*.

Basis for Qualified Opinion

The Group's investment in XYZ Company, a foreign associate acquired during the year and accounted for by the equity method, is carried at xxx on the consolidated statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and ABC's share of XYZ's net income of xxx is included in ABC's income for the year then ended. We were unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the carrying amount of ABC's investment in XYZ as at 30 June 20X1 and ABC's share of XYZ's net income for the year because we were denied access to the financial information, management, and the auditors of XYZ. Consequently, we were unable to determine whether any adjustments to these amounts were necessary.

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001* and the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia. We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code.

We confirm that the independence declaration required by the *Corporations Act 2001*, which has been given to the directors of ABC Company Ltd., would be in the same terms if giving to the directors as at the time of this auditor's report.*

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

The Directors' are responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,[#] but does not include the financial report and our auditor's report thereon.]

Our opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

If, based on the work we have performed, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. As described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion*

* Or, alternatively, include statements (a) to the effect that circumstances have changed since the declaration was given to the relevant directors; and (b) setting out how the declaration would differ if it had been given to the relevant directors at the time the auditor's report was made. [Section 307C (5A)(d) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.]

[#] A more specific description of the other information, such as "the management report and chairman's statement," may be used to identify the other information.

section above, we were unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence about the carrying amount of ABC's investment in XYZ as at 30 June 20X1 and ABC's share of XYZ's net income for the year. Accordingly, we are unable to conclude whether or not the other information is materially misstated with respect to this matter.

[Key Audit Matters]^{*}

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgement, were of most significance in our audit of the financial report of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial report as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters. In addition to the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section we have determined the matters described below to be the key audit matters to be communicated in our report.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ASA 701.]

Directors' Responsibilities for the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 2A in ASA 700.]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 2A in ASA 700.]

Report on the Remuneration Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 2A in ASA 700.][Auditor's name and signature]

[Date of the auditor's report]

[Auditor's address]

^{*} The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

^{*} The auditor is required, under the *Corporations Act 2001*, to sign the auditor's report in both their own name and the name of their firm [section 324AB(3)] or the name of the audit company [section 324AD(1)], as applicable.

Example Auditor's Report
Consolidated Entity-Corporations Act 2001
Adverse opinion that affects the Other Information obtained
(Fair Presentation Framework)

[Aus] Illustration 7A

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a consolidated financial report of a listed company. The audit is a group audit (i.e., ASA 600 applies).
- The financial report is prepared by the directors of the company in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework) and under the *Corporations Act 2001*. The directors have elected to report only the consolidated financial position and financial results in the primary financial statements
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of the directors' responsibility for the financial report in ASA 210.
- The financial report is materially misstated due to the non-consolidation of a subsidiary. The material misstatement is deemed to be pervasive to the financial report. The effects of the misstatement on the financial report have not been determined because it was not practicable to do so (i.e., an adverse opinion is appropriate).
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the company's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ASA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the adverse opinion on the financial report also affects the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial report.
- In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under section 308(3C) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Adverse Opinion

We have audited the financial report of ABC Company Ltd. (the Company), including its subsidiaries (the Group), which comprises the consolidated statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, the consolidated statement of comprehensive income, the consolidated statement of changes in equity and the consolidated statement of cash flows for the year then ended, notes comprising a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information, and the directors' declaration of the Company.

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

In our opinion, because of the significance of the matter discussed in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying financial report of ABC Company Ltd., is not in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, including:

- (a) giving a true and fair view of the Group's consolidated financial position as at 30 June 20X1 and of its consolidated financial performance for the year ended on that date; and
- (b) complying with Australian Accounting Standards and the *Corporations Regulations 2001*.

Basis for Adverse Opinion

As explained in Note X, the Group has not consolidated subsidiary XYZ Company that the Group acquired during 20X1 because it has not yet been able to determine the fair values of certain of the subsidiary's material assets and liabilities at the acquisition date. This investment is therefore accounted for on a cost basis. Under Australian Accounting Standards, the Group should have consolidated this subsidiary and accounted for the acquisition based on provisional amounts. Had XYZ Company been consolidated, many elements in the accompanying financial report would have been materially affected. The effects on the financial report of the failure to consolidate have not been determined.

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001* and the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia. We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code.

We confirm that the independence declaration required by the *Corporations Act 2001*, which has been given to the directors of ABC Company Ltd., would be in the same terms if giving to the directors as at the time of this auditor's report.*

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our adverse opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

The Directors are responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,[#] but does not include the financial report and our auditor's report thereon.]

Our opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit or otherwise appears to be materially misstated. If, based on the work we have performed, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. As described in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* section above, the Group should have consolidated XYZ Company and accounted for the acquisition based on provisional amounts. We have concluded that the other information is materially misstated for the

* Or, alternatively, include statements (a) to the effect that circumstances have changed since the declaration was given to the relevant directors; and (b) setting out how the declaration would differ if it had been given to the relevant directors at the time the auditor's report was made. [Section 307C (5A)(d) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.]

[#] A more specific description of the other information, such as "the management report and chairman's statement," may be used to identify the other information.

same reason with respect to the amounts or other items in the X report affected by the failure to consolidate XYZ Company.

[Key Audit Matters]^{*}

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgement, were of most significance in our audit of the financial report of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial report as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters. In addition to the matter described in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* section we have determined the matters described below to be the key audit matters to be communicated in our report.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ASA 701.]

Directors' Responsibilities for the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 2A in ASA 700.]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 2A in ASA 700.]

Report on the Remuneration Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 2A in ASA 700.]

[Auditor's name and signature][#]

[Date of the auditor's report]

[Auditor's address]

^{*} The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

[#] The auditor is required, under the *Corporations Act 2001*, to sign the auditor's report in both their own name and the name of their firm [section 324AB(3)] or the name of the audit company [section 324AD(1)], as applicable.

Tables of Differences — Proposed Revised ASA 720 and Existing ASA 720
--

Summary of Main Differences — ASA 720 and Existing ASA 720

The table below details the main differences (excluding editorial amendments) between this proposed Auditing Standard and existing ASA 720.

Table 1: New Requirements/Significant Guidance

Item #	New Standard Para. No.	Requirements/Significant Guidance Extract	Commentary
1	12(a)	Annual report – A document, or combination of documents, prepared typically on an annual basis by management or those charged with governance in accordance with law, regulation or custom, the purpose of which is to provide owners (or similar stakeholders) with information on the entity's operations and the entity's financial results and financial position as set out in the financial report. An annual report contains or accompanies the financial report and the auditor's report thereon and usually includes information about the entity's developments, its future outlook and risks and uncertainties, a statement by the entity's governing body, and reports covering governance matters. (Ref: Para. A1–A5)	Definition now limits other information to that contained in an annual report – previously applied to other documents that contained an audited financial report and the auditor's report thereon.
2	14	The auditor shall read the other information and, in doing so shall: (Ref: Para. A23–A24) (a) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the financial report. As the basis for this consideration, the auditor shall, to evaluate their consistency, compare selected amounts or other items in the other information (that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail about, the	The auditor's work effort is now more clearly defined.

Item #	New Standard Para. No.	Requirements/Significant Guidance Extract	Commentary
		<p>amounts or other items in the financial report) with such amounts or other items in the financial report; and (Ref: Para. A25–A29)</p> <p>(b) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor’s knowledge obtained in the audit, in the context of audit evidence obtained and conclusions reached in the audit. (Ref: Para. A30–A36)</p>	
3	21	<p>The auditor’s report shall include a separate section with a heading “Other Information”, or other appropriate heading, when, at the date of the auditor’s report:</p> <p>(a) For an audit of a financial report of a listed entity, the auditor has obtained, or expects to obtain, the other information; or</p> <p>(b) For an audit of a financial report of an entity other than a listed entity, the auditor has obtained some or all of the other information. (Ref: Para. A52)</p>	New section requiring the inclusion of an Other Information section in the auditor’s report.
4	22	<p>When the auditor’s report is required to include an Other Information section in accordance with paragraph 21 of this Auditing Standard, this section shall include: (Ref: Para. A53)</p> <p>(a) A statement that management is responsible for the other information;</p> <p>(b) An identification of:</p> <p>(i) Other information, if any, obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor’s report; and</p>	New section prescribing the contents of the Other Information section in the auditor’s report.

Item #	New Standard Para. No.	Requirements/Significant Guidance Extract	Commentary
		<p>(ii) For an audit of financial report of a listed entity, other information, if any, expected to be obtained after the date of the auditor's report;</p> <p>(c) A statement that the auditor's opinion does not cover the other information and, accordingly, that the auditor does not express (or will not express) an audit opinion or any form of assurance conclusion thereon;</p> <p>(d) A description of the auditor's responsibilities relating to reading, considering and reporting on other information as required by this Auditing Standard; and</p> <p>(e) When other information has been obtained prior to the date of the auditor's report, either:</p> <p>(i) A statement that the auditor has nothing to report; or</p> <p>(ii) If the auditor has concluded that there is an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information, a statement that describes the uncorrected material misstatement of the other information.</p>	
5	A25-A29	<p>A25. Other information may include amounts or other items that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial report. Examples of such amounts or other items may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tables, charts or graphs containing extracts of the financial report. 	Significant new guidance to explain some of the audit procedures the auditor may perform in complying with requirement paragraph 14.

Item #	New Standard Para. No.	Requirements/Significant Guidance Extract	Commentary
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A disclosure providing greater detail about a balance or account shown in the financial report, such as “Revenue for 20X1 comprised XXX million from product X and YYY million from product Y.” • Descriptions of the financial results, such as “Total research and development expense was XXX in 20X1.” <p>A26. In evaluating the consistency of selected amounts or other items in the other information with the financial report, the auditor is not required to compare all amounts or other items in the other information that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial report, with such amounts or other items in the financial report.</p> <p>A27. Selecting the amounts or other items to compare is a matter of professional judgement. Factors relevant to this judgement include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The significance of the amount or other item in the context in which it is presented, which may affect the importance that users would attach to the amount or other item (for example, a key ratio or amount). • If quantitative, the relative size of the amount compared with accounts or items in the financial report or the other 	

Item #	New Standard Para. No.	Requirements/Significant Guidance Extract	Commentary
		<p>information to which they relate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The sensitivity of the particular amount or other item in the other information, for example, share based payments for senior management. <p>A28. Determining the nature and extent of procedures to address the requirement in paragraph 14(a) is a matter of professional judgement, recognising that the auditor's responsibilities under this Auditing Standard do not constitute an assurance engagement on the other information or impose an obligation to obtain assurance about the other information. Examples of such procedures include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For information that is intended to be the same as information in the financial report, comparing the information to the financial report. • For information intended to convey the same meaning as disclosures in the financial report, comparing the words used and considering the significance of differences in wording used and whether such differences imply different meanings. • Obtaining a reconciliation between an amount within the other information and the financial report from management and: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Comparing items in the reconciliation to the financial report and the other information; 	

Item #	New Standard Para. No.	Requirements/Significant Guidance Extract	Commentary
		<p>and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">○ Checking whether the calculations within the reconciliation are arithmetically accurate. <p>A29. Evaluating the consistency of selected amounts or other items in the other information with the financial report includes, when relevant given the nature of the other information, the manner of their presentation compared to the financial report.</p>	

Draft

Table 2: Existing Requirements Not Included in the Proposed Standard

Item #	Existing Standard Para. No.	Requirements, Significant Guidance, Extracts or Descriptions	Commentary
1	Aus 10.1	Withholding the auditor's report is not permitted under the <i>Corporations Act 2001</i> .	In conforming with the ISAs, the AUASB's policy is to limit amendments to the relevant ISA when developing the equivalent Australian standard. Accordingly, references to requirements and guidance originating from outside the Australian Auditing Standards are no longer included in the AUASB's standards.
2	Aus A6.1	For example, the auditor may be required to obtain consent from the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC) prior to resigning from certain audits.	In conforming with the ISAs, the AUASB's policy is to limit amendments to the relevant ISA when developing the equivalent Australian standard. Accordingly, references to requirements and guidance originating from outside the Australian Auditing Standards are no longer included in the AUASB's standards.

EXPOSURE DRAFT

ED 02/15

(May 2015)

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720 ***The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information***

Issued for Comment by the **Auditing and Assurance Standards Board**

Draft

DISCLAIMER

This document contains draft proposals to be considered at a meeting of the AUASB, and does not necessarily reflect the final decisions and/or proposals to be contained in a published Exposure Draft or Auditing Standard. No responsibility is taken by the AUASB for the results of reliance, actions or omissions to act on the basis of any information contained in this document (including appendices), or for any errors or omissions in it.



Australian Government

Auditing and Assurance Standards Board

Commenting on this Exposure Draft

Comments on this Exposure Draft should be forwarded so as to arrive by no later than 31 July 2015. Comments should be addressed to:

The Chairman
Auditing and Assurance Standards Board
PO Box 204, Collins Street West
Melbourne Victoria 8007 AUSTRALIA
E-mail: edcomments@auasb.gov.au

A copy of all non-confidential submissions will be placed on public record on the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB) website: www.auasb.gov.au

Obtaining a Copy of this Exposure Draft

This Exposure Draft is available on the AUASB website: www.auasb.gov.au

Contact Details

Auditing and Assurance Standards Board
Level 7, 600 Bourke Street
Melbourne Victoria 3000 AUSTRALIA

Phone: (03) 8080 7400
Fax: (03) 8080 7450
E-mail: enquiries@auasb.gov.au

Postal Address:
PO Box 204, Collins Street West
Melbourne Victoria 8007 AUSTRALIA

COPYRIGHT

© 2015 Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB). The text, graphics and layout of this Exposure Draft are protected by Australian copyright law and the comparable law of other countries. Reproduction within Australia in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgment of the source as being the AUASB.

Requests and enquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes within Australia should be addressed to the Executive Director, Auditing and Assurance Standards Board, PO Box 204, Collins Street West, Melbourne, Victoria 8007 or sent to enquiries@auasb.gov.au. Otherwise, no part of this Exposure Draft may be reproduced, stored or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of the AUASB except as permitted by law.

This Exposure Draft reproduces substantial parts of the corresponding International Standard on Auditing issued by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB) and published by the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC), in the manner described in the statement on Conformity with International Standards on Auditing. The AUASB acknowledges that IFAC is the owner of copyright in the International Standard on Auditing incorporated in this Exposure Draft throughout the world.

All existing rights in this material are reserved outside Australia. Reproduction outside Australia in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use only.

Further information and requests for authorisation to reproduce this Exposure Draft for commercial purposes outside Australia should be addressed to the Executive Director, Auditing and Assurance Standards Board, PO Box 204, Collins Street West, Melbourne, Victoria 8007 or sent to enquiries@auasb.gov.au. Any decision to approve a request may also require the agreement of IFAC.

ISSN 1030-603X

CONTENTS

PREFACE

AUTHORITY STATEMENT

CONFORMITY WITH INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS ON AUDITING

	<i>Paragraphs</i>
Application	Aus 0.1-Aus 0.2
Operative Date	Aus 0.3
Introduction	
Scope of this Auditing Standard	1-9
Effective Date	10
Objectives	11
Definitions	12
Requirements	13
Reading and Considering the Other Information	14-15
Responding When a Material Inconsistency Appears to Exist or Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated	16
Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement of the Other Information Exists	17-19
Responding When a Material Misstatement in the Financial Report Exists or the Auditor's Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment Needs to Be Updated	20
Reporting	21-24
Documentation	25
Application and Other Explanatory Material	
Definitions	A1-A10
Obtaining the Other Information	A11-A22
Reading and Considering the Other Information	A23-A24
Considering Whether There is a Material Inconsistency between the Other Information and the Financial Report	A25-A36
Remaining Alert for Other Indications that the Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated	A37-A38
Responding When a Material Inconsistency Appears to Exist or Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated	A39-A43
Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement of the Other Information Exists	A44-A50
Responding When a Material Misstatement in the Financial Report Exists or the Auditor's Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment Needs to Be Updated	A51
Reporting	A52-A59
Appendix 1: Examples of Amounts or Other Items that May be Included in the Other Information	
Appendix 2: Illustrations of Auditor's Reports Relating to Other Information	

PREFACE

Reasons for Issuing ED 02/15

The AUASB issues exposure draft ED 02/15 of proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* pursuant to the requirements of the legislative provisions and the Strategic Direction explained below.

The AUASB is an independent statutory committee of the Australian Government established under section 227A of the *Australian Securities and Investments Commission Act 2001*, as amended (ASIC Act). Under section 336 of the *Corporations Act 2001*, the AUASB may make Auditing Standards for the purposes of the corporations legislation. These Auditing Standards are legislative instruments under the *Legislative Instruments Act 2003*.

Under the Strategic Direction given to the AUASB by the Financial Reporting Council (FRC), the AUASB is required, inter alia, to develop auditing standards that have a clear public interest focus and are of the highest quality.

Main Proposals

This proposed Auditing Standard represents the Australian equivalent of revised ISA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* (April 2015) and will replace the current ASA 720 issued by the AUASB in October 2009.

This proposed Auditing Standard contains differences from the revised ISA 720, which have been made to accord with the Australian legislative environment and to maintain audit quality where the AUASB has considered there are compelling reasons to do so.

Proposed Operative Date

It is intended that this proposed Auditing Standard will be operative for financial reporting periods ending on or after 15 December 2016.

Main changes from existing ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report* (October 2009)

The main differences between this proposed Auditing Standard and the Auditing Standard that it supersedes, ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report* (October 2009), are included in the Tables of Differences provided as an attachment to this Exposure Draft.

Request for Comments

Comments are invited on this Exposure Draft of the proposed re-issuance of ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* by no later than 31 July 2015. The AUASB is seeking comments from respondents on the following questions:

1. Have applicable laws and regulations been appropriately addressed in the proposed standard?
2. Are there any laws or regulations that may, or do, prevent or impede the application of the proposed standard, or may conflict with the proposed standard?
3. What, if any, are the additional significant costs to/benefits for auditors and the business community arising from compliance with the main changes to the requirements of this proposed standard, including, in particular, the requirement contained in paragraph 21 with

respect to reporting on other information in the auditor's report? If there are significant costs, do these outweigh the benefits to the users of audit services?

4. Is the removal of (only) "Aus" paragraph references to the *Corporations Act 2001*—currently included within the requirements and application and other explanatory material—supported?

If removal of existing references is not supported, respondents are asked to indicate their preference for locating the re-instated material within the standard:

- In the requirements and application and other explanatory material (as applicable) of the proposed standard; or
- By inclusion of a cross-referenced listing in an appendix to the standard?

5. Are there any other significant public interest matters that constituents wish to raise?

The AUASB prefers that respondents express a clear opinion on whether the proposed Auditing Standard, as a whole, is supported and that this opinion be supplemented by detailed comments, whether supportive or critical, on the above matters. The AUASB regards both supportive and critical comments as essential to a balanced review of the proposed Auditing Standard.

AUTHORITY STATEMENT

The Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB) makes this Auditing Standard ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* pursuant to section 227B of the *Australian Securities and Investments Commission Act 2001* and section 336 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

This Auditing Standard is to be read in conjunction with ASA 101 *Preamble to Australian Auditing Standards*, which sets out the intentions of the AUASB on how the Australian Auditing Standards, operative for financial reporting periods commencing on or after 1 January 2010, are to be understood, interpreted and applied. This Auditing Standard is to be read also in conjunction with ASA 200 *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Australian Auditing Standards*.

Draft

Conformity with International Standards on Auditing

This Auditing Standard conforms with International Standard on Auditing ISA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* issued by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB), an independent standard-setting board of the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC).

Paragraphs that have been added to this Auditing Standard (and do not appear in the text of the equivalent ISA) are identified with the prefix "Aus".

The following application and other explanatory material is additional to ISA 720:

- Appendix 2 includes [Aus] Illustrations 1A-7A (inclusive) example auditor's reports (in respect of a single company and a group) that conform with the requirements of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

This Auditing Standard incorporates terminology and definitions used in Australia.

Compliance with this Auditing Standard enables compliance with ISA 720.

Draft

AUDITING STANDARD ASA 720

The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

Application

- Aus 0.1 This Auditing Standard applies to:
- (a) an audit of a financial report for a financial year, or an audit of a financial report for a half-year, in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*; and
 - (b) an audit of a financial report, or a complete set of financial statements, for any other purpose.
- Aus 0.2 This Auditing Standard also applies, as appropriate, to an audit of other historical financial information.

Operative Date

- Aus 0.3 This Auditing Standard is operative for financial reporting periods ending on or after 15 December 2016.

Introduction

Scope of this Auditing Standard

1. This Australian Standard on Auditing deals with the auditor's responsibilities relating to other information, whether financial or non-financial information (other than financial report and the auditor's report thereon), included in an entity's annual report. An entity's annual report may be a single document or a combination of documents that serve the same purpose.
2. This Auditing Standard is written in the context of an audit of financial report by an independent auditor. Accordingly, the objectives of the auditor in this Auditing Standard are to be understood in the context of the overall objectives of the auditor as stated in paragraph 11 of ASA 200.¹ The requirements in the Australian Auditing Standards are designed to enable the auditor to achieve the objectives specified in the Australian Auditing Standards, and thereby the overall objectives of the auditor. The auditor's opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information, nor does this Auditing Standard require the auditor to obtain audit evidence beyond that required to form an opinion on the financial report.
3. This Auditing Standard requires the auditor to read and consider the other information because other information that is materially inconsistent with the financial report or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit may indicate that there is a material misstatement of the financial report or that a material misstatement of the other information exists, either of which may undermine the credibility of the financial report and the auditor's report thereon. Such material misstatements may also inappropriately influence the economic decisions of the users for whom the auditor's report is prepared.
4. This Auditing Standard may also assist the auditor in complying with relevant ethical requirements² that require the auditor to avoid being knowingly associated with information that the auditor believes contains a materially false or misleading statement, statements or

¹ See ASA 200 Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with International Standards on Auditing.

² ~~[Deleted by the AUASB. Refer Footnote *]-International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants' Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants (IESBA Code), paragraph 110.2~~

* Refer ASA 102 Compliance with Ethical Requirements when Performing Audits, Reviews and Other Assurance Engagements.

information furnished recklessly, or omits or obscures information required to be included where such omission or obscurity would be misleading.

5. Other information may include amounts or other items that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail, about amounts or other items in the financial report, and other amounts or other items about which the auditor has obtained knowledge in the audit. Other information may also include other matters.
6. The auditor's responsibilities relating to other information (other than applicable reporting responsibilities) apply regardless of whether the other information is obtained by the auditor prior to, or after, the date of the auditor's report.
7. This Auditing Standard does not apply to:
 - (a) Preliminary announcements of financial information; or
 - (b) Securities offering documents, including prospectuses.
8. The auditor's responsibilities under this Auditing Standard do not constitute an assurance engagement on other information or impose an obligation on the auditor to obtain assurance about the other information.
9. Law or regulation may impose additional obligations on the auditor in relation to other information that are beyond the scope of this Auditing Standard.

Effective Date

10. [Deleted by the AUASB. Refer Aus 0.3]

Objectives

11. The objectives of the auditor, having read the other information, are:
 - (a) To consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the financial report;
 - (b) To consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit;
 - (c) To respond appropriately when the auditor identifies that such material inconsistencies appear to exist, or when the auditor otherwise becomes aware that other information appears to be materially misstated; and
 - (d) To report in accordance with this Auditing Standard^s.

Definitions

12. For the purposes of this Auditing Standard, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:
 - (a) Annual report – A document, or combination of documents, prepared typically on an annual basis by management or those charged with governance in accordance with law, regulation or custom, the purpose of which is to provide owners (or similar stakeholders) with information on the entity's operations and the entity's financial results and financial position as set out in the financial report. An annual report contains or accompanies the financial report and the auditor's report thereon and usually includes information about the entity's developments, its future outlook and risks and uncertainties, a statement by the entity's governing body, and reports covering governance matters. (Ref: Para. A1–A5)

- (b) Misstatement of the other information – A misstatement of the other information exists when the other information is incorrectly stated or otherwise misleading (including because it omits or obscures information necessary for a proper understanding of a matter disclosed in the other information). (Ref: Para. A6–A7)
- (c) Other information – Financial or non-financial information (other than financial report and the auditor's report thereon) included in an entity's annual report. (Ref: Para. A8–A10)

Requirements

13. The auditor shall: (Ref: Para. A11–A22)
- (a) Determine, through discussion with management, which document(s) comprises the annual report, and the entity's planned manner and timing of the issuance of such document(s);
 - (b) Make appropriate arrangements with management to obtain in a timely manner and, if possible, prior to the date of the auditor's report, the final version of the document(s) comprising the annual report; and
 - (c) When some or all of the document(s) determined in (a) will not be available until after the date of the auditor's report, request management to provide a written representation that the final version of the document(s) will be provided to the auditor when available, and prior to its issuance by the entity, such that the auditor can complete the procedures required by this Auditing Standard. (Ref: Para. A22)

Reading and Considering the Other Information

14. The auditor shall read the other information and, in doing so shall: (Ref: Para. A23–A24)
- (a) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the financial report. As the basis for this consideration, the auditor shall, to evaluate their consistency, compare selected amounts or other items in the other information (that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial report) with such amounts or other items in the financial report; and (Ref: Para. A25–A29)
 - (b) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit, in the context of audit evidence obtained and conclusions reached in the audit. (Ref: Para. A30–A36)
15. While reading the other information in accordance with paragraph 14 of this Auditing Standard, the auditor shall remain alert for indications that the other information not related to the financial report or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit appears to be materially misstated. (Ref: Para. A24, A37–A38)

Responding When a Material Inconsistency Appears to Exist or Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated

16. If the auditor identifies that a material inconsistency appears to exist (or becomes aware that the other information appears to be materially misstated), the auditor shall discuss the matter with management and, if necessary, perform other procedures to conclude whether: (Ref: Para. A39–A43)
- (a) A material misstatement of the other information exists;
 - (b) A material misstatement of the financial report exists; or

- (c) The auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment needs to be updated.

Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement of the Other Information Exists

17. If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement of the other information exists, the auditor shall request management to correct the other information. If management:
- (a) Agrees to make the correction, the auditor shall determine that the correction has been made; or
 - (b) Refuses to make the correction, the auditor shall communicate the matter with those charged with governance and request that the correction be made.
18. If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement exists in other information obtained prior to the date of the auditor's report, and the other information is not corrected after communicating with those charged with governance, the auditor shall take appropriate action, including: (Ref: Para. A44)
- (a) Considering the implications for the auditor's report and communicating with those charged with governance about how the auditor plans to address the material misstatement in the auditor's report (see paragraph 22(e)(ii) of this Auditing Standard); or (Ref: Para. A45)
 - (b) Withdrawing from the engagement, where withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation. (Ref: Para. A46–A47)
19. If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement exists in other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report, the auditor shall:
- (a) If the other information is corrected, perform the procedures necessary in the circumstances; or (Ref: Para. A48)
 - (b) If the other information is not corrected after communicating with those charged with governance, take appropriate action considering the auditor's legal rights and obligations, to seek to have the uncorrected material misstatement appropriately brought to the attention of users for whom the auditor's report is prepared. (Ref: Para. A49–A50)

Responding When a Material Misstatement in the Financial Report Exists or the Auditor's Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment Needs to Be Updated

20. If, as a result of performing the procedures in paragraphs 14–15 of this Auditing Standard, the auditor concludes that a material misstatement in the financial report exists or the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment needs to be updated, the auditor shall respond appropriately in accordance with the other Australian Auditing Standards. (Ref: Para. A51)

Reporting

21. The auditor's report shall include a separate section with a heading "Other Information", or other appropriate heading, when, at the date of the auditor's report:
- (a) For an audit of a financial report of a listed entity, the auditor has obtained, or expects to obtain, the other information; or
 - (b) For an audit of a financial report of an entity other than a listed entity, the auditor has obtained some or all of the other information. (Ref: Para. A52)
22. When the auditor's report is required to include an Other Information section in accordance with paragraph 21 of this Auditing Standard, this section shall include: (Ref: Para. A53)

- (a) A statement that management is responsible for the other information;
 - (b) An identification of:
 - (i) Other information, if any, obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report; and
 - (ii) For an audit of financial report of a listed entity, other information, if any, expected to be obtained after the date of the auditor's report;
 - (c) A statement that the auditor's opinion does not cover the other information and, accordingly, that the auditor does not express (or will not express) an audit opinion or any form of assurance conclusion thereon;
 - (d) A description of the auditor's responsibilities relating to reading, considering and reporting on other information as required by this Auditing Standard; and
 - (e) When other information has been obtained prior to the date of the auditor's report, either:
 - (i) A statement that the auditor has nothing to report; or
 - (ii) If the auditor has concluded that there is an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information, a statement that describes the uncorrected material misstatement of the other information.
23. When the auditor expresses a qualified or adverse opinion in accordance with ASA 705,³ the auditor shall consider the implications of the matter giving rise to the modification of opinion for the statement required in paragraph 22(e) of this Auditing Standard. (Ref: Para. A54–A58)

Reporting Prescribed by Law or Regulation

24. If the auditor is required by law or regulation of a specific jurisdiction to refer to the other information in the auditor's report using a specific layout or wording, the auditor's report shall refer to Australian Auditing Standards only if the auditor's report includes, at a minimum: (Ref: Para. A59)
- (a) Identification of the other information obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report;
 - (b) A description of the auditor's responsibilities with respect to the other information; and
 - (c) An explicit statement addressing the outcome of the auditor's work for this purpose.

Documentation

25. In addressing the requirements of ASA 230⁴ as it applies to this Auditing Standard, the auditor shall include in the audit documentation:
- (a) Documentation of the procedures performed under this Auditing Standard; and
 - (b) The final version of the other information on which the auditor has performed the work required under this Auditing Standard.

* * *

³ See ASA 705 *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

⁴ See ASA 230 *Audit Documentation*, paragraphs 8–11.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definitions

Annual Report (Ref: Para. 12(a))

- A1. Law, regulation or custom may define the content of an annual report, and the name by which it is to be referred, for entities in a particular jurisdiction; however, the content and the name may vary within a jurisdiction and from one jurisdiction to another.
- A2. An annual report is typically prepared on an annual basis. However, when the financial report being audited is prepared for a period less than or more than a year, an annual report may also be prepared that covers the same period as the financial report.
- A3. In some cases, an entity's annual report may be a single document and referred to by the title "annual report" or by some other title. In other cases, law, regulation or custom may require the entity to report to owners (or similar stakeholders) information on the entity's operations and the entity's financial results and financial position as set out in the financial report (i.e., an annual report) by way of a single document, or by way of two or more separate documents that in combination serve the same purpose. For example, depending on law, regulation or custom in a particular jurisdiction, one or more of the following documents may form part of the annual report:
- Management report, management commentary, or operating and financial review or similar reports by those charged with governance (for example, a directors' report).
 - Chairman's statement.
 - Corporate governance statement.
 - Internal control and risk assessment reports.
- A4. An annual report may be made available to users in printed form, or electronically, including on the entity's website. A document (or combination of documents) may meet the definition of an annual report, irrespective of the manner in which it is made available to users.
- A5. An annual report is different in nature, purpose and content from other reports, such as a report prepared to meet the information needs of a specific stakeholder group or a report prepared to comply with a specific regulatory reporting objective (even when such a report is required to be publicly available). Examples of reports that, when issued as stand-alone documents, are not typically part of the combination of documents that comprise an annual report (subject to law, regulation or custom), and that, therefore, are not other information within the scope of this Auditing Standard, include:
- Separate industry or regulatory reports (for example, capital adequacy reports), such as may be prepared in the banking, insurance, and superannuation industries.
 - Corporate social responsibility reports.
 - Sustainability reports.
 - Diversity and equal opportunity reports.
 - Product responsibility reports.
 - Labour practices and working conditions reports.
 - Human rights reports.

Misstatement of the Other Information (Ref: Para. 12(b))

- A6. When a particular matter is disclosed in the other information, the other information may omit or obscure information that is necessary for a proper understanding of that matter. For example, if the other information purports to address the key performance indicators used by management, then omission of a key performance indicator used by management could indicate that the other information is misleading.
- A7. The concept of materiality may be discussed in a framework applicable to the other information and, if so, such a framework may provide a frame of reference for the auditor in making judgements about materiality under this Auditing Standard. In many cases, however, there may be no applicable framework that includes a discussion of the concept of materiality as it applies to the other information. In such circumstances, the following characteristics provide the auditor with a frame of reference in determining if a misstatement of the other information is material:
- Materiality is considered in the context of the common information needs of users as a group. The users of the other information are expected to be the same as the users of the financial report as such users may be expected to read the other information to provide context to the financial report.
 - Judgements about materiality take into account the specific circumstances of the misstatement, considering whether users would be influenced by the effect of the uncorrected misstatement. Not all misstatements will influence the economic decisions of users.
 - Judgements about materiality involve both qualitative and quantitative considerations. Accordingly, such judgements may take into account the nature or magnitude of the items that the other information addresses in the context of the entity's annual report.

Other Information (Ref: Para. 12(c))

- A8. Appendix 1 contains examples of amounts or other items that may be included in the other information.
- A9. In some cases, the applicable financial reporting framework may require specific disclosures but permit them to be located outside of the financial report.⁵ As such disclosures are required by the applicable financial reporting framework, they form part of the financial report. Accordingly, they do not constitute other information for the purpose of this Auditing Standard.
- A10. eXtensible Business Reporting Language (XBRL) tags do not represent other information as defined in this Auditing Standard.

Obtaining the Other Information (Ref: Para. 13)

- A11. Determining the document(s) that is or comprises the annual report is often clear based on law, regulation or custom. In many cases, management or those charged with governance may have customarily issued a package of documents that together comprise the annual report, or may have committed to do so. In some cases, however, it may not be clear which document(s) is or comprises the annual report. In such cases, the timing and purpose of the documents (and for whom they are intended) are matters that may be relevant to the auditor's determination of which document(s) is or comprises the annual report.

⁵ For example, International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) 7, *Financial Instruments: Disclosures*, permits certain disclosures required by the IFRSs to either be given in the financial statements or incorporated by cross-reference from the financial statements to some other statement, such as a management commentary or risk report, that is available to users of the financial statements on the same terms as the financial statements and at the same time.

- A12. When the annual report is translated into other languages pursuant to law or regulation (such as may occur when a jurisdiction has more than one official language), or when multiple “annual reports” are prepared under different legislation (for example, when an entity is listed in more than one jurisdiction), consideration may need to be given as to whether one, or more than one of the “annual reports” form part of the other information. Law or regulation may provide further guidance in this respect.
- A13. Management, or those charged with governance, is responsible for preparing the annual report. The auditor may communicate with management or those charged with governance:
- The auditor’s expectations in relation to obtaining the final version of the annual report (including a combination of documents that together comprise the annual report) in a timely manner prior to the date of the auditor’s report such that the auditor can complete the procedures required by this Auditing Standard before the date of the auditor’s report, or if that is not possible, as soon as practicable and in any case prior to the entity’s issuance of such information.
 - The possible implications when the other information is obtained after the date of the auditor’s report.
- A14. The communications referred to in paragraph A13 may be particularly appropriate for example:
- In an initial audit engagement.
 - When there has been a change in management or those charged with governance.
 - When other information is expected to be obtained after the date of the auditor’s report.
- A15. Where those charged with governance are to approve the other information prior to its issuance by the entity, the final version of such other information is the one that has been approved by those charged with governance for issuance.
- A16. In some cases, the entity’s annual report may be a single document to be released, in accordance with law or regulation or the entity’s reporting practice, shortly after the entity’s financial reporting period such that it is available to the auditor prior to the date of the auditor’s report. In other cases, such a document may not be required to be released until a later time, or at a time of the entity’s choosing. There may also be circumstances when the entity’s annual report is a combination of documents, each subject to different requirements or reporting practice by the entity with respect to the timing of their release.
- A17. There may be circumstances when, at the date of the auditor’s report, the entity is considering the development of a document that may be part of the entity’s annual report (for example, a voluntary report to stakeholders) but management is unable to confirm to the auditor the purpose or timing of such a document. If the auditor is unable to ascertain the purpose or timing of such a document, the document is not considered other information for purposes of this Auditing Standard.
- A18. Obtaining the other information in a timely manner prior to the date of the auditor’s report enables any revisions that are found to be necessary to be made to the financial report, the auditor’s report, or the other information prior to their issuance. The audit engagement letter⁶ may make reference to an agreement with management to make available to the auditor the other information in a timely manner, and if possible prior to the date of the auditor’s report.

⁶ See ASA 210 *Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements*, paragraph A23.

- A19. When other information is only made available to users via the entity's website, the version of the other information obtained from the entity, rather than directly from the entity's website, is the relevant document on which the auditor would perform procedures in accordance with this Auditing Standard. The auditor has no responsibility under this Auditing Standard to search for other information, including other information that may be on the entity's website, nor to perform any procedures to confirm that other information is appropriately displayed on the entity's website or otherwise has been appropriately transmitted or displayed electronically.
- A20. The auditor is not precluded from dating or issuing the auditor's report if the auditor has not obtained some or all of the other information.
- A21. When the other information is obtained after the date of the auditor's report, the auditor is not required to update the procedures performed in accordance with paragraphs 6 and 7 of ASA 560⁷
- A22. ASA 580⁸ establishes requirements and provides guidance on the use of written representations. The written representation required to be requested by paragraph 13(c) regarding other information that will be available only after the date of the auditor's report is intended to support the auditor's ability to complete the procedures required by this Auditing Standard with respect to such information. In addition, the auditor may find it useful to request other written representations, for example, that:
- Management has informed the auditor of all the documents that it expects to issue that may comprise other information;
 - The financial report and any other information obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report is consistent with one another, and the other information does not contain any material misstatements; and
 - With regard to other information that has not been obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report, that management intends to prepare and issue such other information and the expected timing of such issuance.

Reading and Considering the Other Information (Ref: Para. 14–15)

- A23. The auditor is required by ASA 200⁹ to plan and perform the audit with professional scepticism. Maintaining professional scepticism when reading and considering the other information includes, for example, recognising that management may be overly optimistic about the success of its plans, and being alert to information that may be inconsistent with:
- (a) The financial report; or
 - (b) The auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit.
- A24. In accordance with ASA 220¹⁰ the engagement partner is required to take responsibility for the direction, supervision and performance of the audit engagement in compliance with professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements. In the context of this Auditing Standard, factors that may be taken into account when determining the appropriate engagement team members to address the requirements of paragraphs 14–15, include:
- The relative experience of engagement team members.

⁷ See ASA 560 *Subsequent Events*.

⁸ See ASA 580 *Written Representations*.

⁹ See ASA 200, paragraph 15.

¹⁰ See ASA 220 *Quality Control for an Audit of a Financial Report and Other Historical Financial Information*, paragraph 15(a).

- Whether the engagement team members to be assigned the tasks have the relevant knowledge obtained in the audit to identify inconsistencies between the other information and that knowledge.
- The degree of judgement involved in addressing the requirements of paragraph 14–15. For example, performing procedures to evaluate the consistency of amounts in the other information that are intended to be the same as amounts in the financial report may be carried out by less experienced engagement team members.
- Whether, in the case of a group audit, it is necessary to make enquiries of a component auditor in addressing the other information related to that component.

Considering Whether There is a Material Inconsistency between the Other Information and the Financial Report (Ref: Para. 14(a))

- A25. Other information may include amounts or other items that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial report. Examples of such amounts or other items may include:
- Tables, charts or graphs containing extracts of the financial report.
 - A disclosure providing greater detail about a balance or account shown in the financial report, such as “Revenue for 20X1 comprised XXX million from product X and YYY million from product Y.”
 - Descriptions of the financial results, such as “Total research and development expense was XXX in 20X1.”
- A26. In evaluating the consistency of selected amounts or other items in the other information with the financial report, the auditor is not required to compare all amounts or other items in the other information that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial report, with such amounts or other items in the financial report.
- A27. Selecting the amounts or other items to compare is a matter of professional judgement. Factors relevant to this judgement include:
- The significance of the amount or other item in the context in which it is presented, which may affect the importance that users would attach to the amount or other item (for example, a key ratio or amount).
 - If quantitative, the relative size of the amount compared with accounts or items in the financial report or the other information to which they relate.
 - The sensitivity of the particular amount or other item in the other information, for example, share based payments for senior management.
- A28. Determining the nature and extent of procedures to address the requirement in paragraph 14(a) is a matter of professional judgement, recognising that the auditor’s responsibilities under this Auditing Standard do not constitute an assurance engagement on the other information or impose an obligation to obtain assurance about the other information. Examples of such procedures include:
- For information that is intended to be the same as information in the financial report, comparing the information to the financial report.
 - For information intended to convey the same meaning as disclosures in the financial report, comparing the words used and considering the significance of differences in wording used and whether such differences imply different meanings.

- Obtaining a reconciliation between an amount within the other information and the financial report from management and:
 - Comparing items in the reconciliation to the financial report and the other information; and
 - Checking whether the calculations within the reconciliation are arithmetically accurate.
- A29. Evaluating the consistency of selected amounts or other items in the other information with the financial report includes, when relevant given the nature of the other information, the manner of their presentation compared to the financial report.

Considering Whether There Is a Material Inconsistency between the Other Information and the Auditor's Knowledge Obtained in the Audit (Ref: Para. 14(b))

- A30. Other information may include amounts or items that are related to the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit (other than those in paragraph 14(a)). Examples of such amounts or items may include:
- A disclosure of the units produced, or a table summarising such production by geographical region.
 - A statement that "The company introduced product X and product Y during the year."
 - A summary of the locations of the entity's major operations, such as "the entity's major centre of operation is in country X, and there are also operations in countries Y and Z."
- A31. The auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit includes the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control, obtained in accordance with ASA 315¹¹. ASA 315 sets out the auditor's required understanding, which includes such matters as obtaining an understanding of:
- (a) The relevant industry, regulatory, and other external factors;
 - (b) The nature of the entity;
 - (c) The entity's selection and application of accounting policies;
 - (d) The entity's objectives and strategies;
 - (e) The measurement and review of the entity's financial performance; and
 - (f) The entity's internal control.
- A32. The auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit may also include matters that are prospective in nature. Such matters may include, for example, business prospects and future cash flows that the auditor considered when evaluating the assumptions used by management in performing impairment tests on intangible assets such as goodwill, or when evaluating management's assessment of the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.
- A33. In considering whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit, the auditor may focus on those matters in the other information that are of sufficient importance that a misstatement of the other information in relation to that matter could be material.

¹¹ See ASA 315 *Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment*, paragraphs 11–12.

- A34. In relation to many matters in the other information, the auditor's recollection of the audit evidence obtained and conclusions reached in the audit may be sufficient to enable the auditor to consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit. The more experienced and the more familiar with the key aspects of the audit the auditor is, the more likely it is that the auditor's recollection of relevant matters will be sufficient. For example, the auditor may be able to consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit in light of the auditor's recollection of discussions held with management or those charged with governance or findings from procedures carried out during the audit such as the reading of board minutes, without the need to take further action.
- A35. The auditor may determine that referring to relevant audit documentation or making enquiries of relevant members of the engagement team or relevant component auditors is appropriate as a basis for the auditor's consideration of whether a material inconsistency exists. For example:
- When the other information describes the planned cessation of a major product line and, although the auditor is aware of the planned cessation, the auditor may make enquiries of the relevant engagement team member who performed the audit procedures in this area to support the auditor's consideration of whether the description is materially inconsistent with the auditor's knowledge obtained during the audit.
 - When the other information describes important details of a lawsuit addressed in the audit, but the auditor cannot recall them adequately, it may be necessary to refer to the audit documentation where such details are summarised to support the auditor's recollection.
- A36. Whether, and if so the extent to which, the auditor refers to relevant audit documentation, or makes enquiries of relevant members of the engagement team or relevant component auditors is a matter of professional judgement. However, it may not be necessary for the auditor to refer to relevant audit documentation, or to make enquiries of relevant members of the engagement team or relevant component auditors about any matter included in the other information.

Remaining Alert for Other Indications that the Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated (Ref: Para. 15)

- A37. Other information may include discussion of matters that are not related to the financial report and may also extend beyond the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit. For example, the other information may include statements about the entity's greenhouse gas emissions.
- A38. Remaining alert for other indications that the other information not related to the financial report or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit appears to be materially misstated assists the auditor in complying with relevant ethical requirements that require the auditor to avoid being knowingly associated with other information that the auditor believes contains a materially false or misleading statement, a statement furnished recklessly, or omits or obscures necessary information such that the other information is misleading.^{12*} Remaining alert for other indications that the other information appears to be materially misstated could potentially result in the auditor identifying such matters as:
- Differences between the other information and the general knowledge, apart from the knowledge obtained in the audit, of the engagement team member reading the other information that lead the auditor to believe that the other information appears to be materially misstated; or

¹² IESBA Code, paragraph 110.2 [Deleted by the AUASB. Refer footnote *]
* Refer ASA 102.

- An internal inconsistency in the other information that leads the auditor to believe that the other information appears to be materially misstated.

Responding When a Material Inconsistency Appears to Exist or Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated (Ref: Para. 16)

- A39. The auditor's discussion with management about a material inconsistency (or other information that appears to be materially misstated) may include requesting management to provide support for the basis of management's statements in the other information. Based on management's further information or explanations, the auditor may be satisfied that the other information is not materially misstated. For example, management explanations may indicate reasonable and sufficient grounds for valid differences of judgement.
- A40. Conversely, the discussion with management may provide further information that supports the auditor's conclusion that a material misstatement of the other information exists.
- A41. It may be more difficult for the auditor to challenge management on matters of judgement than on those of a more factual nature. However, there may be circumstances where the auditor concludes that the other information contains a statement that is not consistent with the financial report or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit. These circumstances may raise doubt about the other information, the financial report, or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit.
- A42. As there is a wide range of possible material misstatements of the other information, the nature and extent of other procedures the auditor may perform to conclude whether a material misstatement of the other information exists are matters of the auditor's professional judgement in the circumstances.
- A43. When a matter is unrelated to the financial report or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit, the auditor may not be able to fully assess management's responses to the auditor's enquiries. Nevertheless, based on management's further information or explanations, or following changes made by management to the other information, the auditor may be satisfied that a material inconsistency no longer appears to exist or that the other information no longer appears to be materially misstated. When the auditor is unable to conclude that a material inconsistency no longer appears to exist or that the other information no longer appears to be materially misstated, the auditor may request management to consult with a qualified third party (for example, a management's expert or legal counsel). In certain cases, after considering the responses from management's consultation, the auditor may not be able to conclude whether or not a material misstatement of the other information exists. Actions the auditor may then take include one or more of the following:
- Obtaining advice from the auditor's legal counsel;
 - Considering the implications for the auditor's report for example, whether to describe the circumstances when there is a limitation imposed by management; or
 - Withdrawing from the audit, where withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation.

Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement of the Other Information Exists

Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement Exists in Other Information Obtained prior to the Date of the Auditor's Report (Ref: Para. 18)

- A44. The actions the auditor takes if the other information is not corrected after communicating with those charged with governance are a matter of the auditor's professional judgement. The auditor may take into account whether the rationale given by management and those charged with governance for not making the correction raises doubt about the integrity or honesty of

management or those charged with governance, such as when the auditor suspects an intention to mislead. The auditor may also consider it appropriate to seek legal advice. In some cases, the auditor may be required by law, regulation or other professional standards to communicate the matter to a regulator or relevant professional body.

Reporting Implications (Ref: Para. 18(a))

- A45. In rare circumstances, a disclaimer of opinion on the financial report may be appropriate when the refusal to correct the material misstatement of the other information casts such doubt on the integrity of management and those charged with governance as to call into question the reliability of audit evidence in general.

Withdrawal from the Engagement (Ref: Para. 18(b))

- A46. Withdrawal from the engagement, where withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation, may be appropriate when the circumstances surrounding the refusal to correct the material misstatement of the other information cast such doubt on the integrity of management and those charged with governance as to call into question the reliability of representations obtained from them during the audit.

Considerations specific to public sector entities (Ref: Para. 18(b))

- A47. In the public sector, withdrawal from the engagement may not be possible. In such cases, the auditor may issue a report to the legislature providing details of the matter or may take other appropriate actions.

Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement Exists in Other Information Obtained after the Date of the Auditor's Report (Ref: Para. 19)

- A48. If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement exists in other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report, and such a material misstatement has been corrected, the auditor's procedures necessary in the circumstances include determining that the correction has been made (in accordance with paragraph 17(a)) and may include reviewing the steps taken by management to communicate with those in receipt of the other information, if previously issued, to inform them of the revision.
- A49. If those charged with governance do not agree to revise the other information, taking appropriate action to seek to have the uncorrected misstatement appropriately brought to the attention of users for whom the auditor's report is prepared requires the exercise of professional judgement, and may be affected by relevant law or regulation in the jurisdiction. Accordingly, the auditor may consider it appropriate to seek legal advice about the auditor's legal rights and obligations.
- A50. When a material misstatement of the other information remains uncorrected, appropriate actions that the auditor may take to seek to have the uncorrected material misstatement appropriately brought to the attention of users for whom the auditor's report is prepared, when permitted by law or regulation, include, for example:
- Providing a new or amended auditor's report to management including a modified section in accordance with paragraph 22, and requesting management to provide this new or amended auditor's report to users for whom the auditor's report is prepared. In doing so, the auditor may need to consider the effect, if any, on the date of the new or amended auditor's report, in view of the requirements of the ASAs or applicable law or regulation. The auditor may also review the steps taken by management to provide the new or amended auditor's report to such users;
 - Bringing the material misstatement of the other information to the attention of the users for whom the auditor's report is prepared (for example, by addressing the matter in a general meeting of shareholders);

- Communicating with a regulator or relevant professional body about the uncorrected material misstatement; or
- Considering the implications for engagement continuance (see also paragraph A46).

Responding When a Material Misstatement in the Financial Report Exists or the Auditor's Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment Needs to Be Updated (Ref: Para. 20)

A51. In reading the other information, the auditor may become aware of new information that has implications for:

- The auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment and, accordingly, may indicate the need to revise the auditor's risk assessment¹³
- The auditor's responsibility to evaluate the effect of identified misstatements on the audit and of uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial report.¹⁴
- The auditor's responsibilities relating to subsequent events.¹⁵

Reporting (Ref: Para. 21–24)

A52. For an audit of a financial report of an entity other than a listed entity, the auditor may consider that the identification in the auditor's report of other information that the auditor expects to obtain after the date of the auditor's report would be appropriate in order to provide additional transparency about the other information that is subject to the auditor's responsibilities under this Auditing Standard. The auditor may consider it appropriate to do so, for example, when management is able to represent to the auditor that such other information will be issued after the date of the auditor's report.

Illustrative Statements (Ref: Para. 21–22)

A53. Illustrative examples of the "Other Information" section of the auditor's report are included in Appendix 2.

Reporting Implications When the Auditor's Opinion on the Financial Report Is Qualified or Adverse (Ref: Para. 23)

A54. A qualified or adverse auditor's opinion on the financial report may not have an impact on the statement required by paragraph 22(e) if the matter in respect of which the auditor's opinion has been modified is not included or otherwise addressed in the other information and the matter does not affect any part of the other information. For example, a qualified opinion on the financial report because of non-disclosure of directors' remuneration as required by the applicable financial reporting framework may have no implications for the reporting required under this Auditing Standard. In other circumstances, there may be implications for such reporting as described in paragraphs A55–A58.

Qualified Opinion Due to a Material Misstatement in the Financial Report

A55. In circumstances when the auditor's opinion is qualified, consideration may be given as to whether the other information is also materially misstated for the same matter as, or a related matter to, the matter giving rise to the qualified opinion on the financial report.

¹³ See ASA 315, paragraphs 11, 31, and A1.

¹⁴ See ASA 450 *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit*.

¹⁵ See ASA 560, paragraphs 10 and 14.

Qualified Opinion Due to Limitation of Scope

- A56. When there is a limitation of scope with respect to a material item in the financial report, the auditor will not have obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence about that matter. In these circumstances, the auditor may be unable to conclude whether or not the amounts or other items in the other information related to this matter result in a material misstatement of the other information. Accordingly, the auditor may need to modify the statement required by paragraph 22(e) to refer to the auditor's inability to consider management's description of the matter in the other information in respect of which the auditor's opinion on the financial report has been qualified as explained in the Basis for Qualified Opinion paragraph. The auditor is nevertheless required to report any other uncorrected material misstatements of the other information that have been identified.

Adverse Opinion

- A57. An adverse opinion on the financial report relating to a specific matter(s) described in the Basis for Adverse Opinion paragraph does not justify the omission of reporting of material misstatements of the other information that the auditor has identified in the auditor's report in accordance with paragraph 22(e)(ii). When an adverse opinion has been expressed on the financial report, the auditor may need to appropriately modify the statement required by paragraph 22(e) for example, to indicate that amounts or items in the other information is materially misstated for the same matter as, or a related matter to, the matter giving rise to the adverse opinion on the financial report.

Disclaimer of Opinion

- A58. When the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial report, providing further details about the audit, including a section to address other information may overshadow the disclaimer of opinion on the financial report as a whole. Accordingly, in those circumstances, as required by ASA 705 the auditor's report does not include a section addressing the reporting requirements under this Auditing Standard.

Reporting Prescribed by Law or Regulation (Ref: Para. 24)

- A59. ASA 200¹⁶ explains that the auditor may be required to comply with legal or regulatory requirements in addition to the Australian Auditing Standards. Where this is the case, the auditor may be obliged to use a specific layout or wording in the auditor's report that differs from that described in this Auditing Standard. Consistency in the auditor's report, when the audit has been conducted in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards, promotes credibility in the global marketplace by making more readily identifiable those audits that have been conducted in accordance with globally recognised standards. When the differences between the legal or regulatory requirements to report with respect to the other information and this Auditing Standard relate only to the layout and wording in the auditor's report and, at a minimum, each of the elements identified in paragraph 24 is included in the auditor's report, the auditor's report may refer to Australian Auditing Standards. Accordingly, in such circumstances the auditor is considered to have complied with the requirements of this Auditing Standard, even when the layout and wording used in the auditor's report is specified by legal or regulatory reporting requirements.

¹⁶ See ASA 200, paragraph A55.

Appendix 1

(Ref: Para. 14, A8)

EXAMPLES OF AMOUNTS OR OTHER ITEMS THAT MAY BE INCLUDED IN THE OTHER INFORMATION

The following are examples of amounts and other items that may be included in other information. This list is not intended to be exhaustive.

Amounts

- Items in a summary of key financial results, such as net income, earnings per share, dividends, sales and other operating revenues, and purchases and operating expenses.
- Selected operating data, such as income from continuing operations by major operating area, or sales by geographical segment or product line.
- Special items, such as asset dispositions, litigation provisions, asset impairments, tax adjustments, environmental remediation provisions, and restructuring and reorganisation expenses.
- Liquidity and capital resource information, such as cash, cash equivalents and marketable securities; dividends; and debt, capital lease and minority interest obligations.
- Capital expenditures by segment or division.
- Amounts involved in, and related financial effects of, off-balance sheet arrangements.
- Amounts involved in guarantees, contractual obligations, legal or environmental claims, and other contingencies.
- Financial measures or ratios, such as gross margin, return on average capital employed, return on average shareholders' equity, current ratio, interest coverage ratio and debt ratio. Some of these may be directly reconcilable to the financial report.

Other Items

- Explanations of critical accounting estimates and related assumptions.
- Identification of related parties and descriptions of transactions with them.
- Articulation of the entity's policies or approach to manage commodity, foreign exchange or interest rate risks, such as through the use of forward contracts, interest rate swaps, or other financial instruments.
- Descriptions of the nature of off-balance sheet arrangements.
- Descriptions of guarantees, indemnifications, contractual obligations, litigation or environmental liability cases, and other contingencies, including management's qualitative assessments of the entity's related exposures.
- Descriptions of changes in legal or regulatory requirements, such as new tax or environmental regulations, that have materially impacted the entity's operations or fiscal position, or will have a material impact on the entity's future financial prospects.
- Management's qualitative assessments of the impacts of new financial reporting standards that have come into effect during the period, or will come into effect in the following period, on the entity's financial results, financial position and cash flows.

- General descriptions of the business environment and outlook.
- Overview of strategy.
- Descriptions of trends in market prices of key commodities or raw materials.
- Contrasts of supply, demand and regulatory circumstances between geographic regions.
- Explanations of specific factors influencing the entity's profitability in specific segments.

Draft

Appendix 2

(Ref: Para. 21–22, A53)

Illustrations of Auditor's Reports Relating to Other Information

- [Illustration 1: \[Deleted by the AUASB. Refer \[Aus\] Illustration 1A\]](#)
- [Aus] Illustration 1A: An auditor's report of [a listed company](#)~~any entity, whether listed or other than listed~~, containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- [Illustration 2: \[Deleted by the AUASB. Refer \[Aus\] Illustration 2A\]](#)
- [Aus] Illustration 2A: An auditor's report of a ~~listed entity~~[listed company](#) containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Illustration 3: An auditor's report of an entity other than a ~~listed entity~~[listed entity](#) containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- [Illustration 4: \[Deleted by the AUASB. Refer \[Aus\] Illustration 4A\]](#)
- [Aus] Illustration 4A: An auditor's report of a ~~listed entity~~[listed company](#) containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained no other information prior to the date of the auditor's report but expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- [Illustration 5: \[Deleted by the AUASB. Refer \[Aus\] Illustration 5A\]](#)
- [Aus] Illustration 5A: An auditor's report of [a listed company](#)~~any entity, whether listed or other than listed~~, containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has concluded that a material misstatement of the other information exists.
- [Illustration 6: \[Deleted by the AUASB. Refer \[Aus\] Illustration 6A\]](#)
- [Aus] Illustration 6A: An auditor's report of [a listed company](#)~~any entity, whether listed or other than listed~~, containing a qualified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and there is a limitation of scope with respect to a material item in the consolidated financial report which also affects the other information.
- [Illustration 7: \[Deleted by the AUASB. Refer \[Aus\] Illustration 7A\]](#)
- [Aus] Illustration 7A: An auditor's report of [a listed company](#)~~any entity, whether listed or other than listed~~, containing an adverse opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the adverse opinion on the consolidated financial report also affects the other information.

Example Auditor's Report
Single Company-*Corporations Act 2001*
Unmodified opinion - all the Other Information obtained
(Fair Presentation Framework)

[Aus] Illustration [1A](#)

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a ~~financial report of any entity~~ single listed company's financial report, whether listed or other than listed, using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ASA 600* does not apply).
- The financial report is prepared by ~~the directors~~ management of the ~~company~~ entity in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework) and under the *Corporations Act 2001*.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of ~~the directors' management's~~ responsibility for the financial report in ASA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants ~~those of the jurisdiction~~.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the ~~company's~~ entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570.[#]
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ASA 701.[†]
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial report.
- In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under section 308(3C) of the *Corporations Act 2001* ~~law.~~

* See ASA 600 *Special Considerations—Audits of a Group Financial Report* ~~(Report Including the Work of Component Auditors)~~.

[#] See ASA 570 *Going Concern*.

[†] See ASA 701 *Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor's Report*. The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

~~To the Shareholders of ABC Company~~ [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Report^{*}

Opinion

We have audited the financial report of ABC Company Ltd. (the Company), which comprises the statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, ~~and~~ the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies and the directors' declaration.

In our opinion:

~~the accompanying financial report presents~~ report of ABC Company Ltd. is in accordance with the Corporations Act 2001, including:

- (a) Giving a true and fair view of the company's ~~fairly, in all material respects, (or give a true and fair view of) the financial position of the Company~~ as at 30 June 20X1, and (of) its ~~financial performance and its cash flows~~ for the year then ended on that date; and
- (b) Complying with ~~in accordance with A~~ Australian Accounting Standards and the Corporations Regulations 2001.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the Corporations Act 2001 and the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia~~[jurisdiction]~~, ~~and w~~We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code~~se~~ requirements.

We confirm that the independence declaration required by the Corporations Act 2001, which has been given to the directors of ABC Company Ltd., would be in the same terms if giving to the directors as at the time of this auditor's report.*

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

[Key Audit Matters[#]

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgement, were of most significance in our audit of the financial report of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial report as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ASA 701.]

^{*} The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Report" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

^{*} Or, alternatively, include statements (a) to the effect that circumstances have changed since the declaration was given to the relevant directors; and (b) setting out how the declaration would differ if it had been given to the relevant directors at the time the auditor's report was made. [Section 307C (5A)(d) of the Corporations Act 2001.]

[#] The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as “Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

~~Management~~The Directors’ are responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,[§] but does not include the financial report and our auditor’s report thereon.]

Our opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit or otherwise appears to be materially misstated. If, based on the work we have performed, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. We have nothing to report in this regard.

~~Directors’ Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance~~ **for the Financial Report**

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700[#] – see [Aus] Illustration 1 in ASA 700.]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1 in ASA 700.]

Report on the Remuneration Report~~Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements~~

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1 in ASA 700.]

~~[The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor’s report is [name].¹⁷]~~

~~[Auditor’s name and Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction][§]~~

~~[Date of the auditor’s report]~~

~~[Auditor’s Address]~~

~~[Date]~~

[§] A more specific description of the other information, such as “the management report and chairman’s statement,” may be used to identify the other information.

[#] See ASA 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on a Financial Report*.

¹⁷ The name of the engagement partner is included in the auditor’s report for audits of complete sets of general purpose financial statements of listed entities unless, in rare circumstances, such disclosure is reasonably expected to lead to a significant personal security threat (see ISA 700, paragraph 46).

[§] The auditor is required, under the *Corporations Act 2001*, to sign the auditor’s report in both their own name and the name of their firm [section 324AB(3)] or the name of the audit company [section 324AD(1)], as applicable.

Example Auditor's Report
Single Company-Corporations Act 2001
Unmodified opinion - part of the Other Information obtained
(Fair Presentation Framework)

[Aus] Illustration 2A

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a ~~An auditor's report of a~~ single listed company ~~entity's~~ financial report ~~containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.~~ The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ASA 600 does not apply).
- ~~For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:~~
- ~~Audit of a financial report of a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ASA 600 does not apply).~~
- The financial report is prepared by the directors ~~management~~ of the company ~~entity~~ in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework) and under the *Corporations Act 2001*.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of the directors ~~management's~~ responsibility for the financial report in ASA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- ~~The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.~~
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the ~~entity's~~ company's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570 ~~(Revised)~~.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ASA 701.
- The auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial report.
- In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under section 308(3C) of the *Corporations Act 2001*. ~~In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under law.~~

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

~~To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other]~~-Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Report^{*}

Opinion

We have audited the financial report of ABC Company (the Company), ~~which comprises~~which comprises the statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies and the directors' declaration.

In our opinion:

the accompanying financial report of ABC Company Ltd., is in accordance with the Corporations Act 2001, including:

- (a) Giving a true and fair view of the company's financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and of its performance for the year then ended on that date; and
- (b) Complying with Australian Accounting Standards and the Corporations Regulations 2001.

~~, the accompanying financial report present fairly, in all material respects, (or give a true and fair view of) the financial position of the Company as at 30 June 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards.~~

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the Corporations Act 2001 and the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia. We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code.

We confirm that the independence declaration required by the Corporations Act 2001, which has been given to the directors of ABC Company Ltd., would be in the same terms if giving to the directors as at the time of this auditor's report.*

~~We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements.~~ We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgement, were of most significance in our audit of the financial report of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial report as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

^{*} The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Report" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

^{*} Or, alternatively, include statements (a) to the effect that circumstances have changed since the declaration was given to the relevant directors; and (b) setting out how the declaration would differ if it had been given to the relevant directors at the time the auditor's report was made. [Section 307C (5A)(d) of the Corporations Act 2001.]

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ASA 701.]

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as “Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

~~Management~~The Directors ~~are~~^{is} responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the X report[#] (but does not include the financial report and our auditor’s report thereon), which we obtained prior to the date of this auditor’s report, and the Y report, which is expected to be made available to us after that date.

Our opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information and we do not and will not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information identified above and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit, or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

If, based on the work we have performed on the other information that we obtained prior to the date of this auditor’s report, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. We have nothing to report in this regard.

[When we read the Y report, if we conclude that there is a material misstatement therein, we are required to communicate the matter to ~~those charged with governance~~the directors and [describe actions applicable ~~in the jurisdiction~~]]¹⁸

~~Directors’ Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance~~ for the Financial Report^{*}

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1 in ASA 700.]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1 in ASA 700.]

~~Report on the Remuneration Report~~Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1 in ASA 700.]

~~The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor’s report is [name].~~¹⁹

~~[Auditor’s name and Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]~~[#]

~~[Date of the auditor’s report]~~

~~[Auditor’s Address]~~

~~[Date]~~

[#] A more specific description of the other information, such as “the management report and chair’s statement,” may be used to identify the other information.

¹⁸ This additional paragraph may be useful when the auditor has identified an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information obtained after the date of the auditor’s report and has a legal obligation to take specific action in response.

^{*} Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction.

¹⁹ ~~The name of the engagement partner is included in the auditor’s report for audits of financial reports of listed entities unless, in rare circumstances, such disclosure is reasonably expected to lead to a significant personal security threat (see ASA 700, paragraph 46).~~

[#] ~~The auditor is required, under the Corporations Act 2001, to sign the auditor’s report in both their own name and the name of their firm [section 324AB(3)] or the name of the audit company [section 324AD(1)], as applicable.~~

Illustration 3 – An auditor's report of an entity other than a ~~listed entity~~ listed company containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a financial report of an entity other than a ~~listed entity~~ listed company using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ASA 600 does not apply).
- The financial report is prepared by management of the entity in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial report in ASA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants.
- ~~The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.~~
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570.
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ASA 701.
- The auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial report.
- The auditor has no other reporting responsibilities required under law or regulation.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC ~~Company~~ Entity [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Opinion

We have audited the financial report of ABC ~~Entity~~ Company (the ~~Entity~~ Company), ~~which comprises~~ which comprises the statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, ~~and~~ the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies and the declaration by those charged with governance.*

In our opinion, the accompanying financial ~~report presents~~ report presents fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the ~~Company~~ Entity as at 30 June 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards.

* Or other applicable assertion by management or those charged with governance.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report* section of our report. We are independent of the Entity in accordance with the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia. We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code.~~We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements.~~

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

Management²⁰ is responsible for the other information. The other information obtained at the date of this auditor's report is [information included in the X report,²¹ but does not include the financial report and our auditor's report thereon].

Our opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit, or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

If, based on the work we have performed on the other information obtained prior to the date of this auditor's report, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. We have nothing to report in this regard.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Report²²

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see Illustration 3 in ASA 700.]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see Illustration 3 in ASA 700.]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor's Address]

[Date]

²⁰ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction.

²¹ A more specific description of the other information, such as "the management report and chair's statement," may be used to identify the other information.

²² Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction.

Example Auditor's Report
Single Company-*Corporations Act 2001*
Unmodified opinion – No Other Information obtained
(Fair Presentation Framework)

[Aus] Illustration 4A

~~An auditor's report of a listed entity containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained no other information prior to the date of the auditor's report but expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.~~

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a financial report of a single ~~listed entity~~ listed company using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ASA 600 does not apply).
- The financial report is prepared by the directors ~~management~~ of the company ~~entity~~ in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework) and under the *Corporations Act 2001*.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of the directors' ~~management's~~ responsibility for the financial report in ASA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The auditor has obtained no other information prior to the date of the auditor's report but expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- ~~The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.~~
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the company's ~~entity's~~ ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ASA 701.
- The auditor has obtained no other information prior to the date of the auditor's report but expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial report.
- In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under section 308(3C) of the *Corporations Act 2001*. ~~In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under law.~~

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other]-Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Report*

Opinion

We have audited the financial report of ABC Company (the Company), ~~which comprises~~which comprises the statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies and the directors' declaration.

In our opinion:

the accompanying financial report of ABC Company Ltd., is in accordance with the Corporations Act 2001, including:

- (a) Giving a true and fair view of the company's financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and of its performance for the year then ended on that date; and
- ~~(e)~~(b) Complying with Australian Accounting Standards and the Corporations Regulations 2001.

~~In our opinion, the accompanying financial report present fairly, in all material respects, (or give a true and fair view of) the financial position of the Company as at 30 June 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards.~~

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the Corporations Act 2001 and the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia. We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code.~~We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements.~~

We confirm that the independence declaration required by the Corporations Act 2001, which has been given to the directors of ABC Company Ltd., would be in the same terms if giving to the directors as at the time of this auditor's report.*

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgement, were of most significance in our audit of the financial report of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial report as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

* The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Report" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

* Or, alternatively, include statements (a) to the effect that circumstances have changed since the declaration was given to the relevant directors; and (b) setting out how the declaration would differ if it had been given to the relevant directors at the time the auditor's report was made. [Section 307C (5A)(d) of the Corporations Act 2001.]

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ASA 701.]

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as “Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

Management~~The Directors are~~ responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,[#] but does not include the financial report and our auditor’s report thereon]. The X report is expected to be made available to us after the date of this auditor’s report.

Our opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information and we will not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information identified above when it becomes available and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit, or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

[When we read the X report, if we conclude that there is a material misstatement therein, we are required to communicate the matter to ~~those charged with governance~~the directors and [describe actions applicable ~~in the jurisdiction~~].^{23*}

Directors’ Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Report²⁴

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1 A in ASA 700.]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1 A in ASA 700.]

Report on ~~Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements~~the Remuneration Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1 A in ASA 700.]

[Auditor’s name and signature][#]

[Date of the auditor’s report]

[Auditor’s address]

The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor’s report is [name].

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

[#] A more specific description of the other information, such as “the management report and chair’s statement,” may be used to identify the other information.

²³ This additional paragraph may be useful when the auditor has identified an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information obtained after the date of the auditor’s report and has a legal obligation to take specific action in response.

^{*} This additional paragraph may be useful when the auditor has identified an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information obtained after the date of the auditor’s report and has a legal obligation to take specific action in response.

²⁴ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

[#] The auditor is required, under the *Corporations Act 2001*, to sign the auditor’s report in both their own name and the name of their firm [section 324AB(3)] or the name of the audit company [section 324AD(1)], as applicable.

Example Auditor's Report
Single Company-*Corporations Act 2001*
Unmodified opinion – All Other Information obtained; material misstatement
(Fair Presentation Framework)

[Aus] Illustration 5A

~~An auditor's report of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has concluded that a material misstatement of the other information exists.~~

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of ~~a financial report of~~ a single listed company ~~any entity, whether listed or other than listed,~~'s financial report. ~~using a fair presentation framework.~~ The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ASA 600 does not apply).
- The financial report is prepared by the directors of the company in ~~management of the entity in~~ accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework) and under the *Corporations Act 2001*.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of the directors' ~~management's~~ responsibility for the financial report in ASA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has concluded that a material misstatement of the other information exists.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- ~~The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.~~
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the company's ~~entity's~~ ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ASA 701.
- ~~The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has concluded that a material misstatement of the other information exists~~
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial report.
- In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under section 308(3C) of the *Corporations Act 2001*. ~~The auditor has no other reporting responsibilities required under law or regulation.~~

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other] - Appropriate Addressee]

Opinion

~~We have audited the financial report of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies.~~

We have audited the financial report of ABC Company (the Company), which comprises the statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies and the directors' declaration.

In our opinion:

the accompanying financial report of ABC Company Ltd., is in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, including:

- (a) Giving a true and fair view of the company's financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and of its performance for the year then ended on that date; and
- (b) Complying with Australian Accounting Standards and the *Corporations Regulations 2001*.

~~In our opinion, the accompanying financial report present fairly, in all material respects, (or give a true and fair view of) the financial position of the Company as at 30 June 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards.~~

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report* section of our report. ~~We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements.~~ We are independent of the Company in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001* and the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia. We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code.

We confirm that the independence declaration required by the *Corporations Act 2001*, which has been given to the directors of ABC Company Ltd., would be in the same terms if giving to the directors as at the time of this auditor's report.*

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

* Or, alternatively, include statements (a) to the effect that circumstances have changed since the declaration was given to the relevant directors; and (b) setting out how the declaration would differ if it had been given to the relevant directors at the time the auditor's report was made. [Section 307C (5A)(d) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.]

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as “Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

The Directors²⁵ Management²⁵ are responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,[#] but does not include the financial report and our auditor’s report thereon.]

Our opinion on the financial report does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

If, based on the work we have performed, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. As described below, we have concluded that such a material misstatement of the other information exists.

[Description of material misstatement of the other information]

[Key Audit Matters[†]

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgement, were of most significance in our audit of the financial report of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial report as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ASA 701.^{‡‡}]

Directors’ Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Report²⁶

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1A in ASA 700.]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1A in ASA 700.]

~~[The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor’s report is [name].²⁷]~~

Report on the Remuneration Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 1A in ASA 700.]

[Auditor’s name and signature]^{*}

[Date of the auditor’s report]

[Auditor’s address] [Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

²⁵ — Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

[#] A more specific description of the other information, such as “the management report and chairman’s statement,” may be used to identify the other information.

[†] The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

²⁶ — Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

²⁷ ~~[Deleted by the AUASB.] The name of the engagement partner is included in the auditor’s report for audits of financial reports of listed entities unless, in rare circumstances, such disclosure is reasonably expected to lead to a significant personal security threat (see ASA 700, paragraph 46).~~

^{*} The auditor is required, under the *Corporations Act 2001*, to sign the auditor’s report in both their own name and the name of their firm [section 324AB(3)] or the name of the audit company [section 324AD(1)], as applicable.

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

Draft

Example Auditor's Report
Consolidated Entity-*Corporations Act 2001*
Qualified opinion that affects the Other Information obtained
(Fair Presentation Framework)

[Aus] Illustration 6A:

~~An auditor's report of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, containing an qualified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and there is a limitation of scope with respect to a material item in the consolidated financial report which also affects the other information.~~

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a consolidated financial report of a listed company ~~any entity, whether listed or other than listed, using a fair presentation framework~~. The audit is a group audit (i.e., ASA 600 applies).
- The ~~consolidated~~ financial report is prepared by the directors ~~management~~ of the company ~~entity~~ in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework) and under the *Corporations Act 2001*. The directors have elected to report only the consolidated financial position and financial results in the primary financial statements.
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of ~~management's~~ the directors' responsibility for the ~~consolidated~~ financial report in ASA 210.
- The auditor was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding an investment in a foreign associate. The possible effects of the inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence are deemed to be material but not pervasive to the ~~consolidated~~ financial report (i.e., a qualified opinion is appropriate).
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- ~~The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.~~
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the company's ~~entity's~~ ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ASA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the qualified opinion on the ~~consolidated~~ financial report also affects the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the ~~consolidated~~ financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the ~~consolidated~~ financial report.
- In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under section 308(3C) of the *Corporations Act 2001*. ~~The auditor has no other reporting responsibilities required under law or regulation.~~

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

~~To the Shareholders of ABC Company~~ ~~[or Other]~~ -Appropriate Addressee]

Qualified Opinion

We have audited the ~~consolidated~~ financial report of ABC Company Ltd., ~~(the Company), including and its subsidiaries (the Group), which comprise~~ which comprises the consolidated statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, ~~and the consolidated statement of comprehensive income, consolidated statement of changes in equity and consolidated statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the consolidated financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies~~ and the directors' declaration of the Company.

In our opinion except for the possible effects of the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report:

the accompanying financial report of ABC Company Ltd., is in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, including:

- (a) Giving a true and fair view of the Group's consolidated financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and of its consolidated performance for the year then ended on that date; and
- (b) Complying with Australian Accounting Standards and the *Corporations Regulations 2001*.

~~In our opinion, except for the possible effects of the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying consolidated financial report present fairly, in all material respects, (or give a true and fair view of) the financial position of the Group as at 30 June 20X1, and (of) its consolidated financial performance and its consolidated cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards.~~

Basis for Qualified Opinion

The Group's investment in XYZ Company, a foreign associate acquired during the year and accounted for by the equity method, is carried at xxx on the consolidated statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and ABC's share of XYZ's net income of xxx is included in ABC's income for the year then ended. We were unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the carrying amount of ABC's investment in XYZ as at 30 June 20X1 and ABC's share of XYZ's net income for the year because we were denied access to the financial information, management, and the auditors of XYZ. Consequently, we were unable to determine whether any adjustments to these amounts were necessary.

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Report* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001* and the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia. We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code.

We confirm that the independence declaration required by the *Corporations Act 2001*, which has been given to the directors of ABC Company Ltd., would be in the same terms if giving to the directors as at the time of this auditor's report.*

~~We are independent of the Group in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the consolidated financial report in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical~~

* Or, alternatively, include statements (a) to the effect that circumstances have changed since the declaration was given to the relevant directors; and (b) setting out how the declaration would differ if it had been given to the relevant directors at the time the auditor's report was made. [Section 307C (5A)(d) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.]

~~responsibilities in accordance with these requirements.~~ We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as “Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

~~The Directors’ Management~~²⁸ ~~are is~~ responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,[#] but does not include the ~~consolidated~~ financial report and our auditor’s report thereon.]

Our opinion on the ~~consolidated~~ financial report does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the ~~consolidated~~ financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the ~~consolidated~~ financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

If, based on the work we have performed, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. As described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section above, we were unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence about the carrying amount of ABC’s investment in XYZ as at 30 June 20X1 and ABC’s share of XYZ’s net income for the year. Accordingly, we are unable to conclude whether or not the other information is materially misstated with respect to this matter.

[Key Audit Matters^{*}

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgement, were of most significance in our audit of the ~~consolidated~~ financial report of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the ~~consolidated~~ financial report as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters. In addition to the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section we have determined the matters described below to be the key audit matters to be communicated in our report.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ASA 701.]

~~Directors’ Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance~~ for the Financial Report²⁹

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 2A in ASA 700.]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 2A in ASA 700.]

~~[The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor’s report is [name].³⁰~~

Report on the Remuneration Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 2A in ASA 700.]

²⁸ — Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

[#] A more specific description of the other information, such as “the management report and chairman’s statement,” may be used to identify the other information.

^{*} The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

²⁹ — Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

³⁰ — The name of the engagement partner is included in the auditor’s report for audits of financial reports of listed entities unless, in rare circumstances, such disclosure is reasonably expected to lead to a significant personal security threat (see ASA 700, paragraph 46).

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

[Auditor's name and signature]*

[Date of the auditor's report]

[Auditor's address]~~[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]~~

~~[Auditor Address]~~

~~[Date]~~

Draft

* The auditor is required, under the *Corporations Act 2001*, to sign the auditor's report in both their own name and the name of their firm [section 324AB(3)] or the name of the audit company [section 324AD(1)], as applicable.

Example Auditor's Report
Consolidated Entity-*Corporations Act 2001*
Adverse opinion that affects the Other Information obtained
(Fair Presentation Framework)

[Aus] Illustration 7A

~~An auditor's report of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, containing an adverse opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the adverse opinion on the consolidated financial report also affects the other information.~~

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a ~~complete set of~~ consolidated financial report of a listed company ~~any entity, whether listed or other than listed, using a fair presentation framework.~~ The audit is a group audit (i.e., ASA 600 applies).
- The ~~consolidated~~ financial report is prepared by the directors ~~management~~ of the company ~~entity~~ in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards (a general purpose framework) and under the *Corporations Act 2001*. The directors have elected to report only the consolidated financial position and financial results in the primary financial statements
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of the directors' ~~management's~~ responsibility for the ~~consolidated~~ financial report in ASA 210.
- The ~~consolidated~~ financial report is materially misstated due to the non-consolidation of a subsidiary. The material misstatement is deemed to be pervasive to the ~~consolidated~~ financial report. The effects of the misstatement on the ~~consolidated~~ financial report have not been determined because it was not practicable to do so (i.e., an adverse opinion is appropriate).
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- ~~The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.~~
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the company's ~~entity's~~ ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ASA 570.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ASA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the adverse opinion on the ~~consolidated~~ financial report also affects the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the ~~consolidated~~ financial report differ from those responsible for the preparation of the ~~consolidated~~ financial report.
- In addition to the audit of the financial report, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under section 308(3C) of the *Corporations Act 2001*. ~~The auditor has no other reporting responsibilities required under law or regulation.~~

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other] - [Appropriate Addressee]

Adverse Opinion

~~We have audited the consolidated financial report of ABC Company and its subsidiaries (the Group), which comprise the consolidated statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, and the consolidated statement of comprehensive income, consolidated statement of changes in equity and consolidated statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the consolidated financial report, including a summary of significant accounting policies.~~

We have audited the financial report of ABC Company Ltd. (the Company), including its subsidiaries (the Group), which comprises the consolidated statement of financial position as at 30 June 20X1, the consolidated statement of comprehensive income, the consolidated statement of changes in equity and the consolidated statement of cash flows for the year then ended, notes comprising a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information, and the directors' declaration of the Company.

In our opinion, because of the significance of the matter discussed in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying financial report of ABC Company Ltd., is not in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, including:

- (a) giving a true and fair view of the Group's consolidated financial position as at 30 June 20X1 and of its consolidated financial performance for the year ended on that date; and
- (b) complying with Australian Accounting Standards and the *Corporations Regulations 2001*.

~~In our opinion, because of the significance of the matter discussed in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying consolidated financial report do not present fairly (or do not give a true and fair view of) the consolidated financial position of the Group as at 30 June 20X1, and (of) its consolidated financial performance and its consolidated cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards.~~

Basis for Adverse Opinion

As explained in Note X, the Group has not consolidated subsidiary XYZ Company that the Group acquired during 20X1 because it has not yet been able to determine the fair values of certain of the subsidiary's material assets and liabilities at the acquisition date. This investment is therefore accounted for on a cost basis. Under Australian Accounting Standards, the Group should have consolidated this subsidiary and accounted for the acquisition based on provisional amounts. Had XYZ Company been consolidated, many elements in the accompanying ~~consolidated~~ financial report would have been materially affected. The effects on the ~~consolidated~~ financial report of the failure to consolidate have not been determined.

We conducted our audit in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Report* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001* and the ethical requirements of the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board's APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (the Code) that are relevant to our audit of the financial report in Australia. We have also fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code.~~We are independent of the Group in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the consolidated financial report in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements.~~

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

We confirm that the independence declaration required by the *Corporations Act 2001*, which has been given to the directors of ABC Company Ltd., would be in the same terms if giving to the directors as at the time of this auditor's report.*

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our adverse opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

Management³¹The Directors~~are~~^{is} responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,[#] but does not include the ~~consolidated~~ financial report and our auditor's report thereon.]

Our opinion on the ~~consolidated~~ financial report does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the ~~consolidated~~ financial report, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the ~~consolidated~~ financial report or our knowledge obtained in the audit or otherwise appears to be materially misstated. If, based on the work we have performed, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. As described in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* section above, the Group should have consolidated XYZ Company and accounted for the acquisition based on provisional amounts. We have concluded that the other information is materially misstated for the same reason with respect to the amounts or other items in the X report affected by the failure to consolidate XYZ Company.

[Key Audit Matters*]

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgement, were of most significance in our audit of the ~~consolidated~~ financial report of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the ~~consolidated~~ financial report as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters. In addition to the matter described in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* section we have determined the matters described below to be the key audit matters to be communicated in our report.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ASA 701.]

Directors' Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Report³²

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 2A in ASA 700.]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial ~~R~~Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 2A in ASA 700.]

[The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor's report is [name].³³]

* Or, alternatively, include statements (a) to the effect that circumstances have changed since the declaration was given to the relevant directors; and (b) setting out how the declaration would differ if it had been given to the relevant directors at the time the auditor's report was made. [Section 307C (5A)(d) of the *Corporations Act 2001*.]

³¹ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

[#] A more specific description of the other information, such as "the management report and chairman's statement," may be used to identify the other information.

* The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

³² Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

³³ Deleted by the AUASB. The name of the engagement partner is included in the auditor's report for audits of complete sets of general purpose financial statements of listed entities unless, in rare circumstances, such disclosure is reasonably expected to lead to a significant personal security threat (see ASA 700, paragraph 46).

Report on the Remuneration Report

[Reporting in accordance with ASA 700 – see [Aus] Illustration 2A in ASA 700.]

[Auditor's name and signature][#]

[Date of the auditor's report]

[Auditor's address]

~~[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]~~

~~[Auditor Address]~~

~~[Date]~~

Draft

[#] The auditor is required, under the *Corporations Act 2001*, to sign the auditor's report in both their own name and the name of their firm [section 324AB(3)] or the name of the audit company [section 324AD(1)], as applicable.

Tables of Differences — Proposed Revised ASA 720 and Existing ASA 720
--

Summary of Main Differences — ASA 720 and Existing ASA 720

The table below details the main differences (excluding editorial amendments) between this proposed Auditing Standard and existing ASA 720.

Table 1: New Requirements/Significant Guidance

Item #	New Standard Para. No.	Requirements/Significant Guidance Extract	Commentary
1	12(a)	Annual report – A document, or combination of documents, prepared typically on an annual basis by management or those charged with governance in accordance with law, regulation or custom, the purpose of which is to provide owners (or similar stakeholders) with information on the entity's operations and the entity's financial results and financial position as set out in the financial report. An annual report contains or accompanies the financial report and the auditor's report thereon and usually includes information about the entity's developments, its future outlook and risks and uncertainties, a statement by the entity's governing body, and reports covering governance matters. (Ref: Para. A1–A5)	Definition now limits other information to that contained in an annual report – previously applied to other documents that contained an audited financial report and the auditor's report thereon.
2	14	The auditor shall read the other information and, in doing so shall: (Ref: Para. A23–A24) (a) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the financial report. As the basis for this consideration, the auditor shall, to evaluate their consistency, compare selected amounts or other items in the other information (that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail about, the	The auditor's work effort is now more clearly defined.

Item #	New Standard Para. No.	Requirements/Significant Guidance Extract	Commentary
		<p>amounts or other items in the financial report) with such amounts or other items in the financial report; and (Ref: Para. A25–A29)</p> <p>(b) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor’s knowledge obtained in the audit, in the context of audit evidence obtained and conclusions reached in the audit. (Ref: Para. A30–A36)</p>	
3	21	<p>The auditor’s report shall include a separate section with a heading “Other Information”, or other appropriate heading, when, at the date of the auditor’s report:</p> <p>(a) For an audit of a financial report of a listed entity, the auditor has obtained, or expects to obtain, the other information; or</p> <p>(b) For an audit of a financial report of an entity other than a listed entity, the auditor has obtained some or all of the other information. (Ref: Para. A52)</p>	New section requiring the inclusion of an Other Information section in the auditor’s report.
4	22	<p>When the auditor’s report is required to include an Other Information section in accordance with paragraph 21 of this Auditing Standard, this section shall include: (Ref: Para. A53)</p> <p>(a) A statement that management is responsible for the other information;</p> <p>(b) An identification of:</p> <p>(i) Other information, if any, obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor’s report; and</p>	New section prescribing the contents of the Other Information section in the auditor’s report.

Item #	New Standard Para. No.	Requirements/Significant Guidance Extract	Commentary
		<p>(ii) For an audit of financial report of a listed entity, other information, if any, expected to be obtained after the date of the auditor's report;</p> <p>(c) A statement that the auditor's opinion does not cover the other information and, accordingly, that the auditor does not express (or will not express) an audit opinion or any form of assurance conclusion thereon;</p> <p>(d) A description of the auditor's responsibilities relating to reading, considering and reporting on other information as required by this Auditing Standard; and</p> <p>(e) When other information has been obtained prior to the date of the auditor's report, either:</p> <p>(i) A statement that the auditor has nothing to report; or</p> <p>(ii) If the auditor has concluded that there is an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information, a statement that describes the uncorrected material misstatement of the other information.</p>	
5	A25-A29	<p>A25. Other information may include amounts or other items that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial report. Examples of such amounts or other items may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tables, charts or graphs containing extracts of the financial report. 	Significant new guidance to explain some of the audit procedures the auditor may perform in complying with requirement paragraph 14.

Item #	New Standard Para. No.	Requirements/Significant Guidance Extract	Commentary
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A disclosure providing greater detail about a balance or account shown in the financial report, such as “Revenue for 20X1 comprised XXX million from product X and YYY million from product Y.” • Descriptions of the financial results, such as “Total research and development expense was XXX in 20X1.” <p>A26. In evaluating the consistency of selected amounts or other items in the other information with the financial report, the auditor is not required to compare all amounts or other items in the other information that are intended to be the same as, to summarise, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial report, with such amounts or other items in the financial report.</p> <p>A27. Selecting the amounts or other items to compare is a matter of professional judgement. Factors relevant to this judgement include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The significance of the amount or other item in the context in which it is presented, which may affect the importance that users would attach to the amount or other item (for example, a key ratio or amount). • If quantitative, the relative size of the amount compared with accounts or items in the financial report or the other 	

Item #	New Standard Para. No.	Requirements/Significant Guidance Extract	Commentary
		<p>information to which they relate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The sensitivity of the particular amount or other item in the other information, for example, share based payments for senior management. <p>A28. Determining the nature and extent of procedures to address the requirement in paragraph 14(a) is a matter of professional judgement, recognising that the auditor's responsibilities under this Auditing Standard do not constitute an assurance engagement on the other information or impose an obligation to obtain assurance about the other information. Examples of such procedures include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For information that is intended to be the same as information in the financial report, comparing the information to the financial report. • For information intended to convey the same meaning as disclosures in the financial report, comparing the words used and considering the significance of differences in wording used and whether such differences imply different meanings. • Obtaining a reconciliation between an amount within the other information and the financial report from management and: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Comparing items in the reconciliation to the financial report and the other information; 	

Item #	New Standard Para. No.	Requirements/Significant Guidance Extract	Commentary
		<p>and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">○ Checking whether the calculations within the reconciliation are arithmetically accurate. <p>A29 Evaluating the consistency of selected amounts or other items in the other information with the financial report includes, when relevant given the nature of the other information, the manner of their presentation compared to the financial report.</p>	

Draft

Table 2: Existing Requirements Not Included in the Proposed Standard

Item #	Existing Standard Para. No.	Requirements, Significant Guidance, Extracts or Descriptions	Commentary
1	Aus 10.1	Withholding the auditor's report is not permitted under the <i>Corporations Act 2001</i> .	In conforming with the ISAs, the AUASB's policy is to limit amendments to the relevant ISA when developing the equivalent Australian standard. Accordingly, references to requirements and guidance originating from outside the Australian Auditing Standards are no longer included in the AUASB's standards.
2	Aus A6.1	For example, the auditor may be required to obtain consent from the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC) prior to resigning from certain audits.	In conforming with the ISAs, the AUASB's policy is to limit amendments to the relevant ISA when developing the equivalent Australian standard. Accordingly, references to requirements and guidance originating from outside the Australian Auditing Standards are no longer included in the AUASB's standards.

Draft

EXPOSURE DRAFT

ED 02/15

(May 2015)

Proposed Auditing Standard ASA 2015-2 ***Amendments to Australian Auditing Standards***

Issued for Comment by the **Auditing and Assurance Standards Board**

Draft

DISCLAIMER

This document contains draft proposals to be considered at a meeting of the AUASB, and does not necessarily reflect the final decisions and/or proposals to be contained in a published Exposure Draft or Auditing Standard. No responsibility is taken by the AUASB for the results of reliance, actions or omissions to act on the basis of any information contained in this document (including appendices), or for any errors or omissions in it.



Australian Government

Auditing and Assurance Standards Board

Commenting on this Exposure Draft

Comments on this Exposure Draft should be forwarded so as to arrive by no later than 31 July 2015. Comments should be addressed to:

The Chairman
Auditing and Assurance Standards Board
PO Box 204, Collins Street West
Melbourne Victoria 8007 AUSTRALIA
E-mail: edcomments@auasb.gov.au

A copy of all non-confidential submissions will be placed on public record on the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB) website: www.auasb.gov.au

Obtaining a Copy of this Exposure Draft

This Exposure Draft is available on the AUASB website: www.auasb.gov.au

Contact Details

Auditing and Assurance Standards Board
Level 7, 600 Bourke Street
Melbourne Victoria 3000 AUSTRALIA

Phone: (03) 8080 7400
Fax: (03) 8080 7450
E-mail: enquiries@auasb.gov.au

Postal Address:

PO Box 204, Collins Street West
Melbourne Victoria 8007 AUSTRALIA

COPYRIGHT

© 2015 Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB). The text, graphics and layout of this Exposure Draft are protected by Australian copyright law and the comparable law of other countries. Reproduction within Australia in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgment of the source as being the AUASB.

Requests and enquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes should be addressed to the Executive Director, Auditing and Assurance Standards Board, PO Box 204, Collins Street West, Melbourne, Victoria 8007 or sent to enquiries@auasb.gov.au. Otherwise, no part of this Exposure Draft may be reproduced, stored or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of the AUASB except as permitted by law.

ISSN 1030-603X

CONTENTS

PREFACE

AUTHORITY STATEMENT

CONFORMITY WITH INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS ON AUDITING

	<i>Paragraphs</i>
Application	1-2
Operative Date	3
Introduction	
Scope of this Auditing Standard	4
Objective	5
Definition	6
Amendments to Auditing Standards	
Amendments to ASA 210	7-10
Amendments to ASA 230	11
Amendments to ASA 260	12-16
Amendments to ASA 450	17-18
Amendments to ASA 500	19
Amendments to ASA 510	20
Amendments to ASA 560	21-26
Amendments to ASA 570	27
Amendments to ASA 580	28
Amendments to ASA 600	29
Amendments to ASA 700	30-34
Amendments to ASA 701	35-36
Amendments to ASA 705	37-40
Amendments to ASA 706	41-44
Amendments to ASA 710	45
Amendments to ASA 810	46-48

PREFACE

Reasons for Issuing ED 02/15

The AUASB issues exposure draft ED 02/15 of proposed Auditing Standard ASA 2015-2 *Amendments to Australian Auditing Standards* pursuant to the requirements of the legislative provisions and the Strategic Direction explained below.

The AUASB is an independent statutory committee of the Australian Government established under section 227A of the *Australian Securities and Investments Commission Act 2001*, as amended (ASIC Act). Under section 336 of the *Corporations Act 2001*, the AUASB may make Auditing Standards for the purposes of the corporations legislation. These Auditing Standards are legislative instruments under the *Legislative Instruments Act 2003*.

Under the Strategic Direction given to the AUASB by the Financial Reporting Council (FRC), the AUASB is required, inter alia, to develop auditing standards that have a clear public interest focus and are of the highest quality.

Main Proposals

This proposed Auditing Standard makes amendments to the following Auditing Standards:

ASA 210	<i>Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements</i> (27 October 2009, as amended)
ASA 230	<i>Audit Documentation</i> (27 October 2009, as amended)
ASA 260	<i>Communication with Those Charged with Governance</i> (27 October 2009, as amended)
ASA 450	<i>Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit</i> (27 October 2009)
ASA 500	<i>Audit Evidence</i> (27 October 2009)
ASA 510	<i>Initial Audit Engagements-Opening Balances</i> (27 October 2009, as amended)
ASA 560	<i>Subsequent Events</i> (27 October 2009, as amended)
ASA 570	<i>Going Concern</i> (27 October 2009, as amended)
ASA 580	<i>Written Representations</i> (27 October 2009, as amended)
ASA 600	<i>Special Considerations-Audits of a Group Financial Report (Including the Work of Component Auditors)</i> (27 October 2009, as amended)
ASA 700	<i>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on a Financial Report</i> (27 October 2009, as amended)
ASA 701	<i>Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor's Report</i> (1 June 2015)
ASA 705	<i>Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report</i> (27 October 2009, as amended)
ASA 706	<i>Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report</i> (27 October 2009, as amended)
ASA 710	<i>Comparative Information-Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Reports</i> (27 October 2009, as amended)
ASA 810	<i>Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements</i> (27 October 2009)

The amendments to the Australian Auditing Standards comprise consequential changes arising from the proposed revision of ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* as well as changes the AUASB has identified through its review of existing modifications from the equivalent ISAs (i.e. "Aus" paragraphs) where the compelling reasons test has not been met. The amendments to the Australian Auditing Standards arise from conforming amendments made by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB) to ISA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information*. Under the Strategic Direction given to the AUASB by the Financial Reporting Council (FRC), the AUASB is required to have regard to any programme initiated by the IAASB for the revision and enhancement of the International Standards on Auditing (ISAs) and to make appropriate consequential amendments to the Australian Auditing Standards.

Proposed Operative Date

It is intended that this proposed Auditing Standard will be operative for financial reporting periods ending on or after 15 December 2016.

Request for Comments

Comments are invited on this Exposure Draft of the proposed issuance of ASA 2015-2 *Amendments to Australian Auditing Standards* by no later than 31 July 2015. The AUASB is seeking comments from respondents on the following questions:

1. Have applicable laws and regulations been appropriately addressed in the proposed standard?
2. Are there any laws or regulations that may, or do, prevent or impede the application of the proposed standard, or may conflict with the proposed standard?
3. What, if any, are the additional significant costs to/benefits for auditors and the business community arising from compliance with the requirements of this proposed standard? If there are significant costs, do these outweigh the benefits to the users of audit services?
4. Is the removal of (only) "Aus" paragraph references to the *Corporations Act 2001*—currently included within the requirements and application and other explanatory material—supported?

If removal of existing references is not supported, respondents are asked to indicate their preference for locating the re-instated material within the standard:

- In the requirements and application and other explanatory material (as applicable) of the proposed standard; or
 - By inclusion of a cross-referenced listing in an appendix to the standard?
5. Are there any other significant public interest matters that constituents wish to raise?

The AUASB prefers that respondents express a clear opinion on whether the proposed Auditing Standard, as a whole, is supported and that this opinion be supplemented by detailed comments, whether supportive or critical, on the above matters. The AUASB regards both supportive and critical comments as essential to a balanced review of the proposed Auditing Standard.

AUTHORITY STATEMENT

The Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB) makes this Auditing Standard ASA 2015-2 *Amendments to Australian Auditing Standards* pursuant to section 227B of the *Australian Securities and Investments Commission Act 2001* and section 336 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

Draft

Conformity with International Standards on Auditing

This Auditing Standard has been made for Australian legislative purposes. It contains a series of proposed miscellaneous amendments to various Australian Auditing Standards (as shown) arising from the proposed revision of existing Auditing Standard ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report*. These proposed amendments, in the main, reflect similar amendments made to the equivalent International Standards on Auditing (ISAs).

Compliance with the amended Australian Auditing Standards enables compliance with the amended ISAs.

Draft

AUDITING STANDARD ASA 2015-2

Amendments to Australian Auditing Standards

Application

1. This Auditing Standard applies to:
 - an audit of a financial report for a financial year, or an audit of a financial report for a half-year, in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*; and
 - an audit of a financial report, or a complete set of financial statements, for any other purpose.
2. This Auditing Standard also applies, as appropriate, to an audit of other historical financial information.

Operative Date

3. This Auditing Standard is operative for financial reporting periods ending on or after 15 December 2016.

Introduction

Scope of this Auditing Standard

4. This Auditing Standard makes amendments to the Australian Auditing Standards. The amendments to the Australian Auditing Standards comprise consequential changes arising from the proposed revision of ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* as well as changes the AUASB has identified through its review of existing modifications from the equivalent ISAs (i.e. "Aus" paragraphs) where the compelling reasons test has not been met.
5. This Auditing Standard uses underlining, striking out and other typographical material to identify the amendments to Auditing Standards, in order to make the amendments more understandable. Amendments made to text contained in footnotes are shown within the footnotes and underlining and striking out are also used to identify amendments. However, the amendments made by this Auditing Standard do not include that underlining, striking out or other typographical material.

Objective

6. The objective of this Auditing Standard is to make amendments to the following Auditing Standards:
 - (a) ASA 210 *Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements* (27 October 2009, as amended)
 - (b) ASA 230 *Audit Documentation* (27 October 2009, as amended)
 - (c) ASA 260 *Communication with Those Charged with Governance* (27 October 2009, as amended)
 - (d) ASA 450 *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit* (27 October 2009)
 - (e) ASA 500 *Audit Evidence* (27 October 2009, as amended)
 - (f) ASA 510 *Initial Audit Engagements-Opening Balances* (27 October 2009, as amended)

- (g) ASA 560 *Subsequent Events* (27 October 2009, as amended)
- (h) ASA 570 *Going Concern* (27 October 2009, as amended)
- (i) ASA 580 *Written Representations* (27 October 2009, as amended)
- (j) ASA 600 *Special Considerations-Audits of a Group Financial Report* (Including the Work of Component Auditors) (27 October 2009, as amended)
- (k) ASA 700 *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on a Financial Report* (27 October 2009, as amended)
- (l) ASA 701 *Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor's Report* (1 June 2015)
- (m) ASA 705 *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report* (27 October 2009, as amended)
- (n) ASA 706 *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report* (27 October 2009, as amended)
- (o) ASA 710 *Comparative Information-Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Reports* (27 October 2009, as amended)
- (p) ASA 810 *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements* (27 October 2009)

Definition

7. For the purposes of this Auditing Standard, the meanings of terms are set out in each Auditing Standard and in the *AUASB Glossary*. This Auditing Standard does not introduce new definitions.

Amendments to Auditing Standards

Amendments to ASA 210

8. The heading titled “Additional Information (Ref: Para. (b)(iii)(b))” is added after paragraph A19.
9. A new paragraph A20 is inserted as follows:
- Additional information that the auditor may request from management for the purpose of the audit may include when applicable, matters related to other information in accordance with ASA 720. When the auditor expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor’s report, the terms of the audit engagement may also acknowledge the auditor’s responsibilities relating to such other information including, if applicable, the actions that may be appropriate or necessary if the auditor concludes that a material misstatement of the other information exists in other information obtained after the date of the auditor’s report.
10. As a result of the change made in paragraph 9 of this Auditing Standard, subsequent paragraph references are re-numbered and references to these paragraphs are updated accordingly.
11. Appendix 1 is amended to read as follows:
- ...
- [Insert appropriate reference to the expected form and content of the auditor’s report including, if applicable, the reporting on other information in accordance with ASA 720.]

Amendments to ASA 230

12. The Appendix is amended to read as follows:

...

- ASA 720, *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* – paragraph 25

Amendments to ASA 260

13. Paragraph A14 is amended to read as follows:

...

- The documents comprising the other information (as defined in ASA 720) and the planned manner and timing of the issuance of such documents. When the auditor expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report, the discussions with those charged with governance may also include the actions that may be appropriate or necessary if the auditor concludes that a material misstatement of the other information exists in other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report.

14. Paragraph A24 is amended to read as follows:

...

- The auditor has concluded that there is an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information in accordance with ASA 720.

15. The following footnote, referenced to Paragraph A24 amendment listed at 14. above, is inserted as footnote 61:

- 61 See ASA 720, *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information*, paragraph 18(a).

16. Paragraph A27 is amended to read as follow:

Other significant matters arising ~~from~~ during the audit that are directly relevant to those charged with governance in overseeing the financial reporting process may include such matters as material misstatements of fact or material inconsistencies in information accompanying the audited financial report the other information that have been corrected.

17. Appendix 1 is amended to read as follows:

This Appendix identifies paragraphs in ASQC 1 and other Australian Auditing Standards that require communication of specific matters with those charged with governance ...

- ASA 720, *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* – paragraphs 17–19.

Amendments to ASA 450

18. Paragraph Aus A1.1 is deleted.

~~The Australian Accounting Standards explain the role of materiality in making judgements in the preparation and presentation of financial reports by the entity.~~

19. The following footnote *, referenced to Paragraph Aus A1.1 amendment listed at 18. above, is deleted.

~~* See AASB 1031 *Materiality*.~~

20. Paragraph A16 is amended to read as follows:

...

- Affects other information ~~that will be communicated to be included in the entity's annual report documents containing the audited financial report~~ (for example, information to be included in a "Management Discussion and Analysis" or an "Operating and Financial Review") that may reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of the users of the financial report. ASA 720 deals with the auditor's responsibilities relating to ~~consideration of other information, on which the auditor has no obligation to report, in documents containing audited financial report.~~

21. The following footnote, referenced to Paragraph A16 amendment listed at 20. above, is amended as footnote 63:

63 See ASA 720, *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report*.

Amendments to ASA 500

22. Paragraph 5(c) is amended to read as follows:

Audit evidence – Information used by the auditor in arriving at the conclusions on which the auditor's opinion is based. Audit evidence includes both information contained in the accounting records underlying the financial report and other information obtained from other sources.

Amendments to ASA 510

23. The Appendix is amended to read as follows:

Illustration 1:

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.

...

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720.]

Illustration 2:

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

...

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720.]

Amendments to ASA 560

24. Paragraph 1 is amended to read as follows:

This Australian Auditing Standard deals with the auditor's responsibilities relating to subsequent events in an audit of a financial report. It does not deal with matters relating to the auditor's responsibilities for other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report, which are addressed in ASA 720. However, such other information may bring to light a subsequent event that is within the scope of this Auditing Standard. (Ref: Para. A1)

25. The following footnote, referenced to Paragraph 1 amendment listed at 24. above, is amended as footnote 75:

75 See ASA 720, *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information*.

26. Paragraph Aus 12.1 is deleted.

~~For an audit engagement conducted under the *Corporations Act 2001*, management, and those charged with governance, are prohibited from restricting an amendments of the financial report to the effects of the subsequent event or events causing that amendment. Consequently, the auditor is prohibited from restricting audit procedures as required under paragraph 11(b)(i) of this Auditing Standard to such an amendment.~~

27. Paragraph A1 is amended to read as follows:

When the audited financial report is included in other documents subsequent to the issuance of the financial report (other than annual reports that would be within the scope of ASA 720), the auditor may have additional responsibilities relating to subsequent events that the auditor may need to consider, such as legal or regulatory requirements involving the offering of securities to the public in jurisdictions in which the securities are being offered.

...

28. Paragraph Aus A3.1 is deleted.

~~In some cases, law or regulation may identify the point in the financial reporting process at which the audit is expected to be complete.~~

29. The heading titled "Implications of Other Information Obtained after the Date of the Auditor's Report (Ref: Para. 10))" is added after Paragraph A10.

30. New Paragraph A11 is inserted after existing Paragraph A10 as follows: (subsequent paragraph references are renumbered upwards by one)

While the auditor has no obligation to perform any audit procedures regarding the financial report after the date of the auditor's report but before the date the financial report is issued, ASA 720 contains requirements and guidance with respect to other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report, which might include other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report, but before the date the financial report is issued.

31. The heading titled “Implications of Other Information Received after the Financial Report Has Been Issued (Ref: Para. 14))” is added after paragraph A16.

32. New Paragraph A17 is inserted after existing paragraph A16 as follows: (subsequent paragraph references are renumbered upwards by one)

The auditor’s obligations regarding other information received after the date of the auditor’s report are addressed in ASA 720. While the auditor has no obligation to perform any audit procedures regarding the financial report after the financial report has been issued, ASA 720 contains requirements and guidance with respect to other information obtained after the date of the auditor’s report.

33. The Conformity Statement section is updated to reflect there is no longer any conforming differences with the IAASB (requirement Paragraph Aus 12.1 having been deleted at 26. above)

The following requirement is additional to ASA 560:

For an audit engagement conducted under the *Corporations Act 2001*, management, and those charged with governance, are prohibited from restricting an amendments of the financial report to the effects of the subsequent event or events causing that amendment. Consequently, the auditor is prohibited from restricting audit procedures as required under paragraph 11(b)(i) of this Auditing Standard to such an amendment. [Ref: Para. 12.1]

Amendments to ASA 570

34. Appendix 2 is amended to read as follows:

[Aus] Illustration 1A

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

...

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as “Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720.]

[Aus] Illustration 2A

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the qualified opinion on the financial report also affects the other information.

...

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as “Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 6 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720. The last paragraph of the other information section in Illustration 6 would be customised to describe the specific matter giving rise to the qualified opinion that also affects the other information.]

[Aus] Illustration 3A

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor’s report and the matter giving rise to the adverse opinion on financial report also affects the other information

...

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as “Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 7 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720. The last paragraph of the other information section in Illustration 7 would be customised to describe the specific matter giving rise to the adverse opinion that also affects the other information.]

[Aus] Illustration 4A

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor does not include an other information section in accordance with ASA 720.*

...

- * Paragraph A54 of ASA 720, *The Auditor’s Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* requires the auditor not to include an other information section when the auditor issues a disclaimer of opinion on the financial report in accordance with ASA 705.

Amendments to ASA 580

35. Appendix 1 is amended to read as follows:

This appendix identifies paragraphs in other Australian Auditing Standards that require subject-matter specific written representations.

...

- ASA 720, *The Auditor’s Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* – paragraph 13(c).

Amendments to ASA 600

36. Appendix 1 is amended to read as follows:

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the qualified opinion on the financial report also affects the other information.

...

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 6 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720. The last paragraph of the other information section in Illustration 6 would be customised to describe the specific matter giving rise to the qualified opinion that also affects the other information.]

Amendments to ASA 700

37. The heading titled "Other Information" is added after paragraph 31.

38. New Paragraph 32 is inserted after existing Paragraph 31 as follows: (subsequent paragraph references are renumbered upwards by one)

Where applicable, the auditor shall report in accordance with ASA 720.

39. Paragraph 50 is amended to read as follows: (subsequent sub-paragraph references are renumbered upwards by one)

...

- (i) Where applicable, a section that addresses the reporting requirements in paragraph 24 of ASA 720.

40. The following footnote, referenced to Paragraph 32 amendment listed at 38. above, is amended as footnote 92:

92. See ASA 720, paragraph 24.

41. The Appendix is amended to read as follows:

[Aus] Illustration 1A:

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.

...

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as “Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720.]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

...

Paragraph 4041(b)...Paragraph 4041(c)

[Aus] Illustration 2A:

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.

...

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as “Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720.]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

...

Paragraph 4041(b)...Paragraph 4041(c)

Illustration 3:

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.

...

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as “Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720.]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

...

Paragraph 4041(b)...Paragraph 4041(c)

Illustration 4:

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.

...

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720.]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Report

...

Paragraph 4041(b)...Paragraph 4041(c)

Amendments to ASA 701

42. Paragraph A38 is amended to read as follows:

ASA 720 defines the term annual report and explains that documents such as a management report, management commentary, or operating and financial review or similar reports by those charged with governance (e.g., a directors' report); a Chairman's statement; corporate governance statement; or internal control and risk assessment reports may form part of the annual report. ASA 720 addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to other information included in the annual report. Although the auditor's opinion on the financial reports does not cover extend to the other information addressed by ASA 720, the auditor may consider this information, as well as other publicly available communications by the entity or other credible sources, in formulating the description of a key audit matter.

43. The following footnote, referenced to Paragraph A38 amendment listed at 41. above, is amended as follows:

30 See ASA 720, *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report*, paragraphs 12(a) and A1-A3.

Amendments to ASA 705

44. Paragraph 29 is amended to read as follows:

Unless required by law or regulation, when the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial report, the auditor's report shall not include a Key Audit Matters section in accordance with ASA 701 or an Other Information section in accordance with ASA 720. (Ref: Para. A26)

45. The following footnote, referenced to Paragraph 29 amendment listed at 44. above, is inserted as footnote 109 follows:

109. See ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information*, paragraph A54.

46. Paragraph A26 is amended to read as follows:

...However, communication of any key audit matters other than the matter(s) giving rise to the disclaimer of opinion may suggest that the financial report as a whole is more credible in relation to those matters than would be appropriate in the circumstances, and would be inconsistent with the disclaimer of opinion on the financial report as a whole. Similarly, it would not be appropriate to include an Other Information section in accordance with ASA 720 addressing the auditor's consideration of the consistency of the other information with the financial report. Accordingly, paragraph 29 of this Auditing Standard prohibits a Key Audit Matters section or an Other Information section from being included in the auditor's report when the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial report, unless the auditor is otherwise required by law or regulation to communicate key audit matters or to report on other information.

47. The Appendix is amended to read as follows:

[Aus] Illustration 1A:

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the qualified opinion on the financial report also affects the other information.

...

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 6 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720. The last paragraph of the other information section in Illustration 6 would be customised to describe the specific matter giving rise to the qualified opinion that also affects the other information.]

[Aus] Illustration 2A:

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the adverse opinion on the financial report also affects the other information.

...

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 7 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720. The last paragraph of the other information section in Illustration 7 would be customised to describe the specific matter giving rise to the adverse opinion that also affects the other information.]

[Aus] Illustration 3A:

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the qualified opinion on the financial report also affects the other information.

...

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 6 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720. The last paragraph of the other information section in Illustration 6 would be customised to describe the specific matter giving rise to the qualified opinion that also affects the other information.]

Amendments to ASA 706

48. Paragraph 3 is amended to read as follows:

ASA 570 and ASA 720 establish requirements and provide guidance about communication in the auditor's report relating to going concern and other information, respectively.

49. The following footnote, referenced to Paragraph 3 amendment listed at 48. above, is inserted as footnote 119 follows:

119. See ASA 720 The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information.

50. Appendix 3 is amended to read as follows:

Illustration:

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720.]

51. Appendix 4 is amended to read as follows:

Illustration:

...

- The auditor has not obtained any other information prior to the date of the auditor's report.

...

Amendments to ASA 710

52. The Appendix is amended to read as follows:

Illustration 1:

...

- The auditor has not obtained any other information prior to the date of the auditor's report.

...

Illustration 2:

...

- The auditor has not obtained any other information prior to the date of the auditor's report.

...

Illustration 3:

...

- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.

...

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Report and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ASA 720 – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ASA 720.]

Illustration 4:

...

- The auditor has not obtained any other information prior to the date of the auditor's report.

...

Amendments to ASA 810

53. Paragraph Aus 1.1 is deleted.

Auditors that are required to issue an auditor's report on a concise financial report prepared under the *Corporations Act 2001* and Accounting Standard AASB 1039 *Concise Financial Reports* should refer to guidance contained in GS 001 *Concise Financial Reports*.

54. The following footnote, referenced to Paragraph Aus 1.1 amendment listed at 53. above, is deleted:

~~* Issued by the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (December 2008).~~

55. Paragraph Aus 14.1 is deleted.

~~In circumstance where the auditor's report on the audited financial report has been modified, paragraphs 17-18 of this Auditing Standard require additional elements be included in the auditor's report on the summary financial statements.~~

56. Paragraph 24 is amended to read as follows:

The auditor shall read the other information included in a document containing the summary financial statements and related auditor's report to consider whether there is identify a material inconsistency between the other information and, if any, with the summary financial statements. If, on reading the other information, the auditor identifies a material inconsistency, the auditor shall determine whether the summary financial statements or the other information needs to be revised. If, on reading the other information, the auditor becomes aware of an apparent material misstatement of fact that the other information needs to be revised, the auditor shall discuss the matter with management. (Ref: Para. A19)

57. Paragraph Aus A18.1 is deleted.

~~ASA 700 contains requirements and guidance to be applied when unaudited supplementary information is presented with an audited financial report, which may be helpful in applying the requirement in paragraph 23.~~

58. Paragraph A18 is inserted as follows:

ASA 700 contains requirements and guidance to be applied when unaudited supplementary information is presented with an audited financial report that, **applicable** adapted as necessary in the circumstances, may be helpful in applying the requirement in paragraph 23.

59. Footnote 9, previously referenced to Paragraph Aus A18.1 listed at 57. above, is re-located to the ASA 700 reference in Paragraph A18.

60. Paragraph Aus A19.1 is deleted.

~~ASA 720 contains requirements and guidance relating to reading other information included in a document containing the audited financial report and related auditor's report, and responding to material inconsistencies and material misstatements of fact. They may be helpful in applying the requirement in paragraph 24.~~

61. Paragraph A19 is inserted as follows:

ASA 720 contains requirements and guidance ~~relating~~ regarding the auditor's responsibilities relating to ~~reading~~ other information in a financial report audit engagement ~~included in a document containing the audited financial report and related auditor's report, and responding to material inconsistencies and material misstatements of fact.~~ **Adapted Applicable** as necessary in the circumstances, they may be helpful in applying the requirement in paragraph 24.

62. Footnote 10, previously referenced to Paragraph Aus A19.1 listed at 61. above, is re-located to the ASA 720 reference in inserted Paragraph A19.

63. The following footnote, referenced to Paragraph A19 amendment listed at 61. above, is inserted as footnote 109 as follows:

109. See ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report*

64. The Conformity Statement section is updated to reflect there is no longer any conforming differences with the IAASB (requirement Paragraph Aus 14.1 having been deleted at 55. above)

The following requirement is additional to ASA 810:

In circumstance where the auditor's report on the audited financial report has been modified, paragraphs 17-18 of this Auditing Standard require additional elements be included in the auditor's report on the summary financial statements. [Ref: Para. 14.1]

Draft

May 2015

Explanatory Memorandum ***Exposure Draft – The Auditor’s*** ***Responsibilities Relating to Other*** ***Information and Related Conforming*** ***Amendments***

Issued by the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board

DISCLAIMER

This document contains draft proposals to be considered at a meeting of the AUASB, and does not necessarily reflect the final decisions and/or proposals to be contained in a published Exposure Draft or Auditing Standard. No responsibility is taken by the AUASB for the results of reliance, actions or omissions to act on the basis of any information contained in this document (including appendices), or for any errors or omissions in it.



Australian Government

Auditing and Assurance Standards Board

Obtaining a Copy of this Explanatory Memorandum

This Explanatory Memorandum is available on the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB) website: www.auasb.gov.au

Contact Details

Auditing and Assurance Standards Board
Level 7, 600 Bourke Street
Melbourne Victoria 3000 AUSTRALIA

Phone: (03) 8080 7400
Fax: (03) 8080 7450
E-mail: enquiries@auasb.gov.au

Postal Address:

PO Box 204, Collins Street West
Melbourne Victoria 8007 AUSTRALIA

Draft

COPYRIGHT

© 2015 Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB). The text, graphics and layout of this document are protected by Australian copyright law and the comparable law of other countries. Reproduction within Australia in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgment of the source as being the AUASB.

Requests and enquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes should be addressed to the Executive Director, Auditing and Assurance Standards Board, PO Box 204, Collins Street West, Melbourne, Victoria 8007 or sent to enquiries@auasb.gov.au. Otherwise, no part of this document may be reproduced, stored or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of the AUASB except as permitted by law.

ISSN 2201-3644

Important Note and Disclaimer

This Explanatory Memorandum is issued by the AUASB to provide information to auditors and assurance practitioners about the AUASB's implementation in Australia of the IAASB's revisions to ISA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information*.

This Explanatory Memorandum does not establish or extend the requirements under an existing AUASB Standard(s) and is not intended to be a substitute for compliance with the relevant AUASB Standards with which auditors and assurance practitioners are required to comply when conducting an audit or other assurance engagement. No responsibility is taken for the results of actions or omissions to act on the basis of any information contained in this document or for any errors or omissions in it.

Draft

CONTENTS

	<i>Page</i>
Composition of ED 02/15	3
Exposure Draft Questions	4
Background	
IAASB.....	5-12
The AUASB's Approach	
Exposure Drafts.....	13-23
Other Outreach Activities.....	24
Post Implementation Review	25
Application	26-27
Key Enhancements resulting from revisions to ASA 720.....	28-30
Website Resources	31
Appendix 1: Existing "Aus" Paragraphs Proposed to be Removed from Standards impacted by the revisions to ASA 720	

EXPLANATORY MEMORANDUM

Exposure Draft: The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information and Related Conforming Amendments

1. The aim of this Explanatory Memorandum is to provide constituents with information about Exposure Draft: **ED 02/15**, issued on **X** May 2015, and the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board's (AUASB) approach to implementing in Australia, the revision to ISA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information*, of the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB). As the revisions to ISA 720 have been made as part of the IAASB's enhanced auditor reporting project, they are related to the AUASB's recent issuance of ED 01/15 on 30 April 2015.
2. For more information on ED 01/15 refer:
<http://www.auasb.gov.au/News/AUASB-invites-comments-on-Exposure-Draft-01-15---enhancements-to-auditor-reporting>
http://www.auasb.gov.au/admin/file/content102/c3/1_ED_01-15_Explanatory_Memo.pdf

Composition of ED 02/15

3. ED 02/15 contains proposals for the following suite of auditing standards:

ASA	Name of Auditing Standard
720	<i>The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information</i> (revised)
210	<i>Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements</i> (conforming amendments)
230	<i>Audit Documentation</i> (conforming amendments)
260	<i>Communication with Those Charged with Governance</i> (conforming amendments)
450	<i>Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit</i> (conforming amendments)
500	<i>Audit Evidence</i> (conforming amendments)
510	<i>Initial Audit Engagements-Opening Balances</i> (conforming amendments)
560	<i>Subsequent Events</i> (conforming amendments)
570	<i>Going Concern</i> (conforming amendments)
580	<i>Written Representations</i> (conforming amendments)
600	<i>Special Considerations-Audits of a Group Financial Report (Including the Work of Component Auditors)</i> (conforming amendments)
700	<i>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on a Financial Report</i> (conforming amendments)
701	<i>Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor's Report</i> (conforming amendments)
705	<i>Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report</i> (conforming amendments)
706	<i>Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report</i> (conforming amendments)
710	<i>Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report</i> (conforming amendments)
810	<i>Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements</i> (conforming amendments)

Exposure Draft Questions

4. The AUASB is especially interested in constituents' views on:
- (a) What, if any, are the additional significant costs to/benefits for auditors and the business community arising from compliance with the main changes to the requirements of the proposed standards, including, in particular, the requirement contained in paragraph 21 with respect to reporting on other information in the auditor's report? If significant costs are expected, the AUASB would like to understand:
 - (i) Where those costs are likely to occur;
 - (ii) The estimated extent of costs, in percentage terms; and
 - (iii) Whether expected costs outweigh the benefits to the users of audit services?
 - (b) Whether the removal of (only) "Aus" paragraph references to the *Corporations Act 2001*—currently included within the requirements and application and other explanatory material—supported?

If removal of existing references is not supported, respondents are asked to indicate their preference for locating the re-instated material within the standard:

 - In the requirements and application and other explanatory material (as applicable) of the proposed standard; or
 - By inclusion of a cross-referenced listing in an appendix to the standard?

Background

IAASB

5. The stated objective of the IAASB's revision of ISA 720 "was to ensure that the ISA continues to be capable of enhancing the credibility of financial statements through specifying appropriate responsibilities of the auditor relating to the range of other information in documents containing audited financial information, taking account of how such information is disseminated." The revision comes as part of wide ranging changes the IAASB has issued aimed at enhancing the informational value of the auditor's report to users and incorporates auditor reporting on other information dependent on whether the entity is listed in certain circumstances. The IAASB has also renamed the title of the standard from ISA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements* to ISA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information*.
6. The application date for the IAASB's revisions to ISA 720 is for financial statement periods ending on or after 15 December 2016. This is consistent with the already issued enhancements to auditor reporting (now contained in the AUASB's ED 01/15).

Expected Benefits

7. In revising ISA 720, the IAASB sought to:
- Improve **audit quality** through bringing greater consistency regarding auditors' consideration of the diverse range of other information;
 - Increase the **value of the audit**, without changing its scope, in a cost beneficial manner, through **enhancing the auditor's responsibilities** with respect to the other information; and

- Improve **transparency** by requiring auditors to articulate in their (auditor's) reports their responsibilities under the ISA 720 and the outcome of their work relative to the other information.
8. Further details can be found on the IAASB's website: <http://www.ifac.org/auditing-assurance>
- **At a Glance**
<http://www.ifac.org/system/files/publications/files/ISA-720-%28Revised%29-At-A-Glance.pdf>
 - **Basis for Conclusions**
<http://www.ifac.org/system/files/publications/files/ISA-720-%28Revised%29-Basis-for-Conclusions.pdf>
 - **ISA 720 and related conforming amendments**
<https://www.ifac.org/system/files/publications/files/ISA-720-%28Revised%29.pdf>

AUASB

9. In accordance with its mandates under section 227 of the *ASIC Act 2001* and the Financial Reporting Council's (FRC) Strategic Direction, the AUASB's policy is to adopt the IAASB's auditing standards (ISAs), unless there are compelling reasons not to do so; and to amend the ISAs only when there are compelling reasons to do so.
10. Compelling reasons fall broadly into two categories: legal and regulatory; and principles and practices considered appropriate in maintaining or improving audit quality in Australia. Compelling reasons are further guided by the AUASB's policy of harmonisation with the standards of the New Zealand Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (NZAuASB).
11. The AUASB's principles of convergence with the ISAs and harmonisation with the New Zealand auditing standards can be found on the AUASB's website:
http://www.auasb.gov.au/admin/file/content102/c3/Aug14_IAASB-NZAuASB_Principles_of_Convergence_and_Harmonisation.pdf
12. The AUASB has decided to adopt the revised ISA 720 and amended ISAs, relating to the auditor's responsibilities related to other information, into the Australian Auditing Standards that are made under section 336 of the *Corporations Act 2001*. Prior to implementation, the AUASB is required to consult with constituents and accordingly now issues Exposure Draft ED 02/15 for public exposure and comment. All comments received from constituents are considered by the AUASB prior to finalisation of the proposed new, revised or amended standards.

The AUASB's Approach

Exposure Drafts

Timetables

13. As is customary, the AUASB develops its exposure drafts from the *issued* ISA equivalent standards. The IAASB issued the main suite of auditor reporting standards in January 2015 (these standards form the basis of the AUASB's **ED 01/15**). The related standard dealing with the auditor's responsibilities relating to other information (issued by the IAASB in April 2015) forms the basis of the AUASB's ED 02/15. The standards comprising the AUASB's Exposure Drafts are as follows:

Explanatory Memorandum Exposure Draft: The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information and Related Conforming Amendments

This ED 02/15: Issued on X May 2015 for 60 day exposure (closes 31 July 2015)

ASA 720	<i>The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information</i>	Revised
Several	<i>ASAs 210, 230, 260, 450, 500, 510, 560, 570, 580, 600, 700, 701, 705, 706, 710 and 810</i>	Conforming Amendments

ED 01/15: Issued on the 30 April 2015 for 60 day exposure (closes 30 June 2015)

ASA 700	<i>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on a Report</i>	Revised
ASA 701	<i>Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor's Report (KAM)</i>	New
ASA 705	<i>Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report</i>	Revised
ASA 706	<i>Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report</i>	Revised
ASA 570	<i>Going Concern</i>	Revised
ASA 260	<i>Communicating with Those Charged with Governance</i>	Revised
Several	<i>ASAs 210, 220, 230, 510, 540, 580, 600 and 710</i>	Conforming Amendments

14. Due to the IAASB's expected staggered issuance of the remaining standards, the revision of which also impacts on the enhancements to auditor reporting, the AUASB expects to issue two further exposure drafts as follows:

ED 03/15: Expected issuance after the 28 July 2015 AUASB meeting

Disclosures (Several)	Amendments to several standards including those that may have been included in EDs 01/15 and 02/15	Amending standard
------------------------------	---	--------------------------

ED 01/16: Expected issuance after the February 2016 AUASB meeting

ASA 800	<i>Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Reports Prepared in Accordance with Special Purpose Frameworks</i>	Revised
ASA 805	<i>Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts or Items of a Financial Statement</i> [Not issued under the <i>Corporations Act 2001</i>]	Revised
Several	Amendments to several standards including those that may have been included in EDs 01/15, 02/15 and 03/15	Amending standard

Methods Used

15. As indicated in the table above, the construct of each exposure draft differs according to the nature of the changes, namely:
- Standards that have significant changes indicate they have been revised and are labelled as such by the IAASB. These standards will replace the relevant existing Australian Auditing Standards (e.g. ASA 720 within **ED 02/15**).
 - Standards that are affected by conforming amendments do not impose original requirements. Accordingly, changes of this nature are dealt with through an amending standard. An amending standard is a legislative mechanism that facilitates minor changes to an existing standard. A “compiled standard” is the result of an existing standard adjusted by an amending standard(s). All Exposure Drafts are expected to have conforming amendments.
 - A Standard that is new (i.e. ASA 701 (KAM) within ED 01/15) is not a replacement or revision. This standard will be a new addition to the suite of Australian Auditing Standards.

Exposure Draft Protocols

16. Under its convergence policies, the AUASB continues to include requirements and guidance that are in addition to, or a clarification of, the equivalent ISA only when the compelling reason test have been met. Any such modifications continue to be identified in the Australian Auditing Standards by paragraph numbering commencing with an “Aus” prefix. Any such changes do not diminish the requirements of the equivalent ISA.
17. In addition to those changes that meet the compelling reason test, the AUASB makes format and terminology changes to comply with requirements relating primarily to legislative instruments. Such changes are machinery in nature and do not change the meaning of the equivalent ISA.

AUASB Modifications to the ISAs

18. In line with the AUASB’s policy of convergence with the standards of the IAASB (see link at paragraph 11 above), the AUASB proposes to delete:
- Existing modifications from the equivalent ISAs (i.e. “Aus” paragraphs), contained within the Australian Auditing Standards, where the compelling reason test have not been met.
 - References included within the existing Australian Auditing Standards, to requirements contained in other laws or regulations, including those to the *Corporations Act 2001*.

[The basis of this decision is that compliance with such requirements means compliance with *those* laws or regulations, not compliance with the Australian Auditing Standards. For example, a requirement to report under section 311 of the

Corporations Act 2001, is a requirement under that Act and not under an Auditing Standard.]

19. Accordingly, a number of “Aus” paragraphs, described in paragraph 16 above, that are contained within existing standards have been removed from the proposed standards—see **Appendix 1** to this Explanatory Memorandum for a listing and description of these paragraphs.

General

20. All exposure drafts (EDs) will be open to constituents for a **60 day comment period**.
21. Each subsequent ED will include, where applicable, the amendments from the previous ED(s) to enable clarity of the accumulated changes to the standards. Constituents are asked to limit their comments to the relevant ED, however, where a comment or a substantive issue (only) relating to a prior ED needs to be made, constituents are asked to identify the issue separately and where applicable indicate the effect, if any, on the subsequent ED(s).
22. At the completion of each exposure period, the AUASB will consider constituents’ submissions and where the AUASB determines that compelling reason exist, amendments to the exposure draft will be made.
23. On a progressive basis, the AUASB intends to provide *preliminary approvals* to the final standards. The preliminary approved versions of the standards will be available on the AUASB website. All standards included in the 2015 exposures – 01/15, 02/15 and 03/15 are intended to be finalised and issued in 2015. **ED 01/16** is intended to be finalised and issued in early 2016.

Other Outreach Activities

24. In addition to the public exposure process, the AUASB intends to:
- (a) Conduct roundtable consultative meetings; and
 - (b) Hold specific discussions with a selection of constituents.

Post Implementation Review

25. The AUASB intends to conduct a post implementation review of the enhancements to auditor reporting, including the auditor’s responsibilities relating to other information. The AUASB’s post implementation review will feed into, and be informed by, the post implementation reviews of the IAASB and the NZAuASB.

Application

26. The entire suite of Auditing Standards relating to auditor reporting enhancements, including the auditor’s responsibilities relating to other information, are applicable for financial reporting periods **ending on or after 15 December 2016**. This application date corresponds with that of the equivalent ISAs.

Early Adoption

27. Consistent with the IAASB’s policy, all Australian Auditing Standards may be early adopted unless explicitly prohibited. Early adoption, in this context, is intended by the AUASB to mean adoption of the entire suite of Auditing Standards relating to auditor reporting enhancements and revised ASA 720 *The Auditor’s Responsibilities Relating to Other Information*.

Key Enhancements resulting from revisions to ASA 720

28. For all audits:
- Broadening and clarifying the **scope** of other information to be the “annual report”.
 - Clarifying and enhancing the **auditor’s work effort** on the other information.
 - Retention of key existing concept that the auditor does **not audit the other information** and that consequently no assurance is expressed on the other information.
 - Other Information **reporting** in certain circumstances (refer 29. and 30. below)
29. In respect of the auditor’s report for audits of listed entities:
- **Inclusion of a new section in the auditor’s report** on other information to communicate to users:
 - Management’s and the auditor’s responsibilities related to the other information;
 - Identification of the other information;
 - A statement that the auditor’s opinion does not cover the other information (no assurance is expressed); and
 - In respect of the other information:
 - ◆ whether the other information has been received prior to the date of the auditor’s report, and if so, the results of the auditor’s work performed on the other information; or
 - ◆ If the other information has not been received, that it is expected to be obtained after the date of the auditor’s report.
30. In respect of the auditor’s report for other than listed entities:
- **Conditional inclusion of a new section in the auditor’s report** on other information if some or all of the other information has been received prior to the date of the auditor’s report. Auditors are to communicate to users:
 - Management’s and the auditor’s responsibilities related to the other information;
 - Identification of the other information;
 - A statement that the auditor’s opinion does not cover the other information (no assurance is expressed); and
 - In respect of the other information, whether it has been received prior to the date of the auditor’s report, and if so, the results of the auditor’s work performed on the other information.

Website Resources

31. The AUASB welcomes constituents’ input to the development of Australian Auditing Standards and regards both supportive and critical comments as essential to a balanced review of the proposed standards. Constituents are encouraged to access the websites of the [AUASB](#) and the [IAASB](#) to obtain further information.

* *

Appendix 1

(Ref: Para. 19)

LISTING OF EXISTING “AUS” PARAGRAPHS PROPOSED TO BE REMOVED FROM PRE-EXISTING STANDARDS IMPACTED BY REVISIONS TO ASA 720

Table 1: *References to the Corporations Act 2001*

Standard	Paragraph Reference [Shaded = Requirement]	Paragraph Text
560	Aus 12.1	For an audit engagement conducted under the <i>Corporations Act 2001</i> , management, and those charged with governance, are prohibited from restricting an amendments of the financial report to the effects of the subsequent event or events causing that amendment. Consequently, the auditor is prohibited from restricting audit procedures as required under paragraph 11(b)(i) of this Auditing Standard to such an amendment.
810	Aus 1.1	Auditors that are required to issue an auditor’s report on a concise financial report prepared under the <i>Corporations Act 2001</i> and Accounting Standard AASB 1039 <i>Concise Financial Reports</i> should refer to guidance contained in GS 001 <i>Concise Financial Reports</i> .

Table 2: *Other References*

Standard	Paragraph Reference [Shaded = Requirement]	Paragraph Text
450	Aus A1.1	The Australian Accounting Standards explain the role of materiality in making judgements in the preparation and presentation of financial reports by the entity.
560	Aus A3.1	In some cases, law or regulation may identify the point in the financial reporting process at which the audit is expected to be complete.
810	Aus 14.1	In circumstance where the auditor's report on the audited financial report has been modified, paragraphs 17-18 of this Auditing Standard require additional elements be included in the auditor's report on the summary financial statements.
810	Aus A18.1	ASA 700 contains requirements and guidance to be applied when unaudited supplementary information is presented with an audited financial report, which may be helpful in applying the requirement in paragraph 23.
810	Aus A19.1	ASA 720 contains requirements and guidance relating to reading other information included in a document containing the audited financial report and related auditor's report, and responding to material inconsistencies and material misstatements of fact. They may be helpful in applying the requirement in paragraph 24.

**

Final Pronouncement
April 2015

International Standard on Auditing™ (ISA™) 720
(Revised)

The Auditor's Responsibilities
Relating to Other Information

and

Related Conforming Amendments

This document was developed and approved by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB®).

This IAASB develops auditing and assurance standards and guidance for use by all professional accountants under a shared standard-setting process involving the Public Interest Oversight Board, which oversees the activities of the IAASB, and the IAASB Consultative Advisory Group, which provides public interest input into the development of the standards and guidance.

The objective of the IAASB is to serve the public interest by setting high-quality auditing, assurance, and other related standards and by facilitating the convergence of international and national auditing and assurance standards, thereby enhancing the quality and consistency of practice throughout the world and strengthening public confidence in the global auditing and assurance profession.

The structures and processes that support the operations of the IAASB are facilitated by the International Federation of Accountants® (IFAC®).

Copyright © April 2015 by the IFAC®.

The IAASB logo, name and acronym, and the names of the pronouncements it issues and related acronyms are trademarks and permissions please see [page 101](#).

CONTENTS

	Page
ISA 720 (Revised), <i>The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information</i>	4
Conforming Amendments to Other ISAs	45

INTERNATIONAL STANDARD ON AUDITING 720 (REVISED)

THE AUDITOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES RELATING TO OTHER INFORMATION

(Effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2016)

CONTENTS

	Paragraph
Introduction	
Scope of this ISA	1–9
Effective Date	10
Objectives	11
Definitions	12
Requirements	
Obtaining the Other Information	13
Reading and Considering the Other Information	14–15
Responding When a Material Inconsistency Appears to Exist or Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated	16
Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement of the Other Information Exists	17–19
Responding When a Material Misstatement in the Financial Statement Exists or the Auditor's Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment Needs to be Updated.....	20
Reporting	21–24
Documentation	25
Application and Other Explanatory Material	
Definitions	A1–A10
Obtaining the Other Information	A11–A22
Reading and Considering the Other Information	A23–A38
Responding When a Material Inconsistency Appears to Exist or Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated	A39–A43
Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement of the Other Information Exists	A44–A50
Responding When a Material Misstatement in the Financial Statement Exists or the Auditor's Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment Needs to be Updated.....	A51
Reporting	A52–A59

Appendix 1: Examples of Amounts or Other Items that May be Included in the Other Information

Appendix 2: Illustrations of Auditor's Reports Relating to Other Information

International Standard on Auditing (ISA) 720 (Revised), <i>The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information</i> , should be read in conjunction with ISA 200, <i>Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with International Standards on Auditing</i> .

Introduction

Scope of this ISA

1. This International Standard on Auditing (ISA) deals with the auditor's responsibilities relating to other information, whether financial or non-financial information (other than financial statements and the auditor's report thereon), included in an entity's annual report. An entity's annual report may be a single document or a combination of documents that serve the same purpose.
2. This ISA is written in the context of an audit of financial statements by an independent auditor. Accordingly, the objectives of the auditor in this ISA are to be understood in the context of the overall objectives of the auditor as stated in paragraph 11 of ISA 200.¹ The requirements in the ISAs are designed to enable the auditor to achieve the objectives specified in the ISAs, and thereby the overall objectives of the auditor. The auditor's opinion on the financial statements does not cover the other information, nor does this ISA require the auditor to obtain audit evidence beyond that required to form an opinion on the financial statements.
3. This ISA requires the auditor to read and consider the other information because other information that is materially inconsistent with the financial statements or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit may indicate that there is a material misstatement of the financial statements or that a material misstatement of the other information exists, either of which may undermine the credibility of the financial statements and the auditor's report thereon. Such material misstatements may also inappropriately influence the economic decisions of the users for whom the auditor's report is prepared.
4. This ISA may also assist the auditor in complying with relevant ethical requirements² that require the auditor to avoid being knowingly associated with information that the auditor believes contains a materially false or misleading statement, statements or information furnished recklessly, or omits or obscures information required to be included where such omission or obscurity would be misleading.
5. Other information may include amounts or other items that are intended to be the same as, to summarize, or to provide greater detail, about amounts or other items in the financial statements, and other amounts or other items about which the auditor has obtained knowledge in the audit. Other information may also include other matters.
6. The auditor's responsibilities relating to other information (other than applicable reporting responsibilities) apply regardless of whether the other information is obtained by the auditor prior to, or after, the date of the auditor's report.
7. This ISA does not apply to:
 - (a) Preliminary announcements of financial information; or
 - (b) Securities offering documents, including prospectuses.
8. The auditor's responsibilities under this ISA do not constitute an assurance engagement on other information or impose an obligation on the auditor to obtain assurance about the other information.

¹ ISA 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with International Standards on Auditing*

² International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants' *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (IESBA Code), paragraph 110.2

9. Law or regulation may impose additional obligations on the auditor in relation to other information that are beyond the scope of this ISA.

Effective Date

10. This ISA is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2016.

Objectives

11. The objectives of the auditor, having read the other information, are:
 - (a) To consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the financial statements;
 - (b) To consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit;
 - (c) To respond appropriately when the auditor identifies that such material inconsistencies appear to exist, or when the auditor otherwise becomes aware that other information appears to be materially misstated; and
 - (d) To report in accordance with this ISA.

Definitions

12. For purposes of the ISAs, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:
 - (a) Annual report – A document, or combination of documents, prepared typically on an annual basis by management or those charged with governance in accordance with law, regulation or custom, the purpose of which is to provide owners (or similar stakeholders) with information on the entity's operations and the entity's financial results and financial position as set out in the financial statements. An annual report contains or accompanies the financial statements and the auditor's report thereon and usually includes information about the entity's developments, its future outlook and risks and uncertainties, a statement by the entity's governing body, and reports covering governance matters. (Ref: Para. A1–A5)
 - (b) Misstatement of the other information – A misstatement of the other information exists when the other information is incorrectly stated or otherwise misleading (including because it omits or obscures information necessary for a proper understanding of a matter disclosed in the other information). (Ref: Para. A6–A7)
 - (c) Other information – Financial or non-financial information (other than financial statements and the auditor's report thereon) included in an entity's annual report. (Ref: Para. A8–A10)

Requirements

Obtaining the Other Information

13. The auditor shall: (Ref: Para. A11–A22)
 - (a) Determine, through discussion with management, which document(s) comprises the annual report, and the entity's planned manner and timing of the issuance of such document(s);

- (b) Make appropriate arrangements with management to obtain in a timely manner and, if possible, prior to the date of the auditor's report, the final version of the document(s) comprising the annual report; and
- (c) When some or all of the document(s) determined in (a) will not be available until after the date of the auditor's report, request management to provide a written representation that the final version of the document(s) will be provided to the auditor when available, and prior to its issuance by the entity, such that the auditor can complete the procedures required by this ISA. (Ref: Para. A22)

Reading and Considering the Other Information

- 14. The auditor shall read the other information and, in doing so shall: (Ref: Para. A23–A24)
 - (a) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the financial statements. As the basis for this consideration, the auditor shall, to evaluate their consistency, compare selected amounts or other items in the other information (that are intended to be the same as, to summarize, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial statements) with such amounts or other items in the financial statements; and (Ref: Para. A25–A29)
 - (b) Consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit, in the context of audit evidence obtained and conclusions reached in the audit. (Ref: Para. A30–A36)
- 15. While reading the other information in accordance with paragraph 14, the auditor shall remain alert for indications that the other information not related to the financial statements or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit appears to be materially misstated. (Ref: Para. A24, A37–A38)

Responding When a Material Inconsistency Appears to Exist or Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated

- 16. If the auditor identifies that a material inconsistency appears to exist (or becomes aware that the other information appears to be materially misstated), the auditor shall discuss the matter with management and, if necessary, perform other procedures to conclude whether: (Ref: Para. A39–A43)
 - (a) A material misstatement of the other information exists;
 - (b) A material misstatement of the financial statements exists; or
 - (c) The auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment needs to be updated.

Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement of the Other Information Exists

- 17. If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement of the other information exists, the auditor shall request management to correct the other information. If management:
 - (a) Agrees to make the correction, the auditor shall determine that the correction has been made; or
 - (b) Refuses to make the correction, the auditor shall communicate the matter with those charged with governance and request that the correction be made.

18. If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement exists in other information obtained prior to the date of the auditor's report, and the other information is not corrected after communicating with those charged with governance, the auditor shall take appropriate action, including: (Ref: Para. A44)
 - (a) Considering the implications for the auditor's report and communicating with those charged with governance about how the auditor plans to address the material misstatement in the auditor's report (see paragraph 22(e)(ii)); or (Ref: Para. A45)
 - (b) Withdrawing from the engagement, where withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation. (Ref: Para. A46–A47)
19. If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement exists in other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report, the auditor shall:
 - (a) If the other information is corrected, perform the procedures necessary in the circumstances; or (Ref: Para. A48)
 - (b) If the other information is not corrected after communicating with those charged with governance, take appropriate action considering the auditor's legal rights and obligations, to seek to have the uncorrected material misstatement appropriately brought to the attention of users for whom the auditor's report is prepared. (Ref: Para. A49–A50)

Responding When a Material Misstatement in the Financial Statements Exists or the Auditor's Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment Needs to Be Updated

20. If, as a result of performing the procedures in paragraphs 14–15, the auditor concludes that a material misstatement in the financial statements exists or the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment needs to be updated, the auditor shall respond appropriately in accordance with the other ISAs. (Ref: Para. A51)

Reporting

21. The auditor's report shall include a separate section with a heading "Other Information", or other appropriate heading, when, at the date of the auditor's report:
 - (a) For an audit of financial statements of a listed entity, the auditor has obtained, or expects to obtain, the other information; or
 - (b) For an audit of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity, the auditor has obtained some or all of the other information. (Ref: Para. A52)
22. When the auditor's report is required to include an Other Information section in accordance with paragraph 21, this section shall include: (Ref: Para. A53)
 - (a) A statement that management is responsible for the other information;
 - (b) An identification of:
 - (i) Other information, if any, obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report; and
 - (ii) For an audit of financial statements of a listed entity, other information, if any, expected to be obtained after the date of the auditor's report;

- (c) A statement that the auditor's opinion does not cover the other information and, accordingly, that the auditor does not express (or will not express) an audit opinion or any form of assurance conclusion thereon;
 - (d) A description of the auditor's responsibilities relating to reading, considering and reporting on other information as required by this ISA; and
 - (e) When other information has been obtained prior to the date of the auditor's report, either:
 - (i) A statement that the auditor has nothing to report; or
 - (ii) If the auditor has concluded that there is an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information, a statement that describes the uncorrected material misstatement of the other information.
23. When the auditor expresses a qualified or adverse opinion in accordance with ISA 705 (Revised),³ the auditor shall consider the implications of the matter giving rise to the modification of opinion for the statement required in paragraph 22(e). (Ref: Para. A54–A58)

Reporting Prescribed by Law or Regulation

24. If the auditor is required by law or regulation of a specific jurisdiction to refer to the other information in the auditor's report using a specific layout or wording, the auditor's report shall refer to International Standards on Auditing only if the auditor's report includes, at a minimum: (Ref: Para. A59)
- (a) Identification of the other information obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report;
 - (b) A description of the auditor's responsibilities with respect to the other information; and
 - (c) An explicit statement addressing the outcome of the auditor's work for this purpose.

Documentation

25. In addressing the requirements of ISA 230⁴ as it applies to this ISA, the auditor shall include in the audit documentation:
- (a) Documentation of the procedures performed under this ISA; and
 - (b) The final version of the other information on which the auditor has performed the work required under this ISA.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Definitions

Annual Report (Ref: Para. 12(a))

- A1. Law, regulation or custom may define the content of an annual report, and the name by which it is to be referred, for entities in a particular jurisdiction; however, the content and the name may vary within a jurisdiction and from one jurisdiction to another.

³ ISA 705 (Revised), *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*

⁴ ISA 230, *Audit Documentation*, paragraphs 8–11

- A2. An annual report is typically prepared on an annual basis. However, when the financial statements being audited are prepared for a period less than or more than a year, an annual report may also be prepared that covers the same period as the financial statements.
- A3. In some cases, an entity's annual report may be a single document and referred to by the title "annual report" or by some other title. In other cases, law, regulation or custom may require the entity to report to owners (or similar stakeholders) information on the entity's operations and the entity's financial results and financial position as set out in the financial statements (i.e., an annual report) by way of a single document, or by way of two or more separate documents that in combination serve the same purpose. For example, depending on law, regulation or custom in a particular jurisdiction, one or more of the following documents may form part of the annual report:
- Management report, management commentary, or operating and financial review or similar reports by those charged with governance (for example, a directors' report).
 - Chairman's statement.
 - Corporate governance statement.
 - Internal control and risk assessment reports.
- A4. An annual report may be made available to users in printed form, or electronically, including on the entity's website. A document (or combination of documents) may meet the definition of an annual report, irrespective of the manner in which it is made available to users.
- A5. An annual report is different in nature, purpose and content from other reports, such as a report prepared to meet the information needs of a specific stakeholder group or a report prepared to comply with a specific regulatory reporting objective (even when such a report is required to be publicly available). Examples of reports that, when issued as standalone documents, are not typically part of the combination of documents that comprise an annual report (subject to law, regulation or custom), and that, therefore, are not other information within the scope of this ISA, include:
- Separate industry or regulatory reports (for example, capital adequacy reports), such as may be prepared in the banking, insurance, and pension industries.
 - Corporate social responsibility reports.
 - Sustainability reports.
 - Diversity and equal opportunity reports.
 - Product responsibility reports.
 - Labor practices and working conditions reports.
 - Human rights reports.

Misstatement of the Other Information (Ref: Para. 12(b))

- A6. When a particular matter is disclosed in the other information, the other information may omit or obscure information that is necessary for a proper understanding of that matter. For example, if the other information purports to address the key performance indicators used by management, then omission of a key performance indicator used by management could indicate that the other information is misleading.

- A7. The concept of materiality may be discussed in a framework applicable to the other information and, if so, such a framework may provide a frame of reference for the auditor in making judgments about materiality under this ISA. In many cases, however, there may be no applicable framework that includes a discussion of the concept of materiality as it applies to the other information. In such circumstances, the following characteristics provide the auditor with a frame of reference in determining if a misstatement of the other information is material:
- Materiality is considered in the context of the common information needs of users as a group. The users of the other information are expected to be the same as the users of the financial statements as such users may be expected to read the other information to provide context to the financial statements.
 - Judgments about materiality take into account the specific circumstances of the misstatement, considering whether users would be influenced by the effect of the uncorrected misstatement. Not all misstatements will influence the economic decisions of users.
 - Judgments about materiality involve both qualitative and quantitative considerations. Accordingly, such judgments may take into account the nature or magnitude of the items that the other information addresses in the context of the entity's annual report.

Other Information (Ref: Para. 12(c))

- A8. Appendix 1 contains examples of amounts or other items that may be included in the other information.
- A9. In some cases, the applicable financial reporting framework may require specific disclosures but permit them to be located outside of the financial statements.⁵ As such disclosures are required by the applicable financial reporting framework, they form part of the financial statements. Accordingly, they do not constitute other information for the purpose of this ISA.
- A10. eXtensible Business Reporting Language (XBRL) tags do not represent other information as defined in this ISA.

Obtaining the Other Information (Ref: Para. 13)

- A11. Determining the document(s) that is or comprises the annual report is often clear based on law, regulation or custom. In many cases, management or those charged with governance may have customarily issued a package of documents that together comprise the annual report, or may have committed to do so. In some cases, however, it may not be clear which document(s) is or comprises the annual report. In such cases, the timing and purpose of the documents (and for whom they are intended) are matters that may be relevant to the auditor's determination of which document(s) is or comprises the annual report.
- A12. When the annual report is translated into other languages pursuant to law or regulation (such as may occur when a jurisdiction has more than one official language), or when multiple "annual reports" are prepared under different legislation (for example, when an entity is listed in more than one jurisdiction), consideration may need to be given as to whether one, or more than one of the "annual

⁵ For example, International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) 7, *Financial Instruments: Disclosures*, permits certain disclosures required by the IFRSs to either be given in the financial statements or incorporated by cross-reference from the financial statements to some other statement, such as a management commentary or risk report, that is available to users of the financial statements on the same terms as the financial statements and at the same time.

reports" form part of the other information. Local law or regulation may provide further guidance in this respect.

- A13. Management, or those charged with governance, is responsible for preparing the annual report. The auditor may communicate with management or those charged with governance:
- The auditor's expectations in relation to obtaining the final version of the annual report (including a combination of documents that together comprise the annual report) in a timely manner prior to the date of the auditor's report such that the auditor can complete the procedures required by this ISA before the date of the auditor's report, or if that is not possible, as soon as practicable and in any case prior to the entity's issuance of such information.
 - The possible implications when the other information is obtained after the date of the auditor's report.
- A14. The communications referred to in paragraph A13 may be particularly appropriate for example:
- In an initial audit engagement.
 - When there has been a change in management or those charged with governance.
 - When other information is expected to be obtained after the date of the auditor's report.
- A15. Where those charged with governance are to approve the other information prior to its issuance by the entity, the final version of such other information is the one that has been approved by those charged with governance for issuance.
- A16. In some cases, the entity's annual report may be a single document to be released, in accordance with law or regulation or the entity's reporting practice, shortly after the entity's financial reporting period such that it is available to the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report. In other cases, such a document may not be required to be released until a later time, or at a time of the entity's choosing. There may also be circumstances when the entity's annual report is a combination of documents, each subject to different requirements or reporting practice by the entity with respect to the timing of their release.
- A17. There may be circumstances when, at the date of the auditor's report, the entity is considering the development of a document that may be part of the entity's annual report (for example, a voluntary report to stakeholders) but management is unable to confirm to the auditor the purpose or timing of such a document. If the auditor is unable to ascertain the purpose or timing of such a document, the document is not considered other information for purposes of this ISA.
- A18. Obtaining the other information in a timely manner prior to the date of the auditor's report enables any revisions that are found to be necessary to be made to the financial statements, the auditor's report, or the other information prior to their issuance. The audit engagement letter⁶ may make reference to an agreement with management to make available to the auditor the other information in a timely manner, and if possible prior to the date of the auditor's report.
- A19. When other information is only made available to users via the entity's website, the version of the other information obtained from the entity, rather than directly from the entity's website, is the relevant document on which the auditor would perform procedures in accordance with this ISA. The auditor has no responsibility under this ISA to search for other information, including other information that may be on the entity's website, nor to perform any procedures to confirm that other information is

⁶ ISA 210, *Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements*, paragraph A23

appropriately displayed on the entity's website or otherwise has been appropriately transmitted or displayed electronically.

- A20. The auditor is not precluded from dating or issuing the auditor's report if the auditor has not obtained some or all of the other information.
- A21. When the other information is obtained after the date of the auditor's report, the auditor is not required to update the procedures performed in accordance with paragraphs 6 and 7 of ISA 560.⁷
- A22. ISA 580⁸ establishes requirements and provides guidance on the use of written representations. The written representation required to be requested by paragraph 13(c) regarding other information that will be available only after the date of the auditor's report is intended to support the auditor's ability to complete the procedures required by this ISA with respect to such information. In addition, the auditor may find it useful to request other written representations, for example, that:
- Management has informed the auditor of all the documents that it expects to issue that may comprise other information;
 - The financial statements and any other information obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report are consistent with one another, and the other information does not contain any material misstatements; and
 - With regard to other information that has not been obtained by the auditor prior to the date of the auditor's report, that management intends to prepare and issue such other information and the expected timing of such issuance.

Reading and Considering the Other Information (Ref: Para. 14–15)

- A23. The auditor is required by ISA 200⁹ to plan and perform the audit with professional skepticism. Maintaining professional skepticism when reading and considering the other information includes, for example, recognizing that management may be overly optimistic about the success of its plans, and being alert to information that may be inconsistent with:
- (a) The financial statements; or
 - (b) The auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit.
- A24. In accordance with ISA 220,¹⁰ the engagement partner is required to take responsibility for the direction, supervision and performance of the audit engagement in compliance with professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements. In the context of this ISA, factors that may be taken into account when determining the appropriate engagement team members to address the requirements of paragraphs 14–15, include:
- The relative experience of engagement team members.
 - Whether the engagement team members to be assigned the tasks have the relevant knowledge obtained in the audit to identify inconsistencies between the other information and that knowledge.

⁷ ISA 560, *Subsequent Events*

⁸ ISA 580, *Written Representations*

⁹ ISA 200, paragraph 15

¹⁰ ISA 220, *Quality Control for an Audit of Financial Statements*, paragraph 15(a)

- The degree of judgment involved in addressing the requirements of paragraph 14–15. For example, performing procedures to evaluate the consistency of amounts in the other information that are intended to be the same as amounts in the financial statements may be carried out by less experienced engagement team members.
- Whether, in the case of a group audit, it is necessary to make inquiries of a component auditor in addressing the other information related to that component.

Considering Whether There is a Material Inconsistency between the Other Information and the Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 14(a))

A25. Other information may include amounts or other items that are intended to be the same as, to summarize, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial statements. Examples of such amounts or other items may include:

- Tables, charts or graphs containing extracts of the financial statements.
- A disclosure providing greater detail about a balance or account shown in the financial statements, such as “Revenue for 20X1 comprised XXX million from product X and YYY million from product Y.”
- Descriptions of the financial results, such as “Total research and development expense was XXX in 20X1.”

A26. In evaluating the consistency of selected amounts or other items in the other information with the financial statements, the auditor is not required to compare all amounts or other items in the other information that are intended to be the same as, to summarize, or to provide greater detail about, the amounts or other items in the financial statements, with such amounts or other items in the financial statements.

A27. Selecting the amounts or other items to compare is a matter of professional judgment. Factors relevant to this judgment include:

- The significance of the amount or other item in the context in which it is presented, which may affect the importance that users would attach to the amount or other item (for example, a key ratio or amount).
- If quantitative, the relative size of the amount compared with accounts or items in the financial statements or the other information to which they relate.
- The sensitivity of the particular amount or other item in the other information, for example, share based payments for senior management.

A28. Determining the nature and extent of procedures to address the requirement in paragraph 14(a) is a matter of professional judgment, recognizing that the auditor’s responsibilities under this ISA do not constitute an assurance engagement on the other information or impose an obligation to obtain assurance about the other information. Examples of such procedures include:

- For information that is intended to be the same as information in the financial statements, comparing the information to the financial statements.
- For information intended to convey the same meaning as disclosures in the financial statements, comparing the words used and considering the significance of differences in wording used and whether such differences imply different meanings.

- Obtaining a reconciliation between an amount within the other information and the financial statements from management and:
 - Comparing items in the reconciliation to the financial statements and the other information; and
 - Checking whether the calculations within the reconciliation are arithmetically accurate.

A29. Evaluating the consistency of selected amounts or other items in the other information with the financial statements includes, when relevant given the nature of the other information, the manner of their presentation compared to the financial statements.

Considering Whether There Is a Material Inconsistency between the Other Information and the Auditor's Knowledge Obtained in the Audit (Ref: Para. 14(b))

A30. Other information may include amounts or items that are related to the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit (other than those in paragraph 14(a)). Examples of such amounts or items may include:

- A disclosure of the units produced, or a table summarizing such production by geographical region.
- A statement that "The company introduced product X and product Y during the year."
- A summary of the locations of the entity's major operations, such as "the entity's major center of operation is in country X, and there are also operations in countries Y and Z."

A31. The auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit includes the auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control, obtained in accordance with ISA 315 (Revised).¹¹ ISA 315 (Revised) sets out the auditor's required understanding, which includes such matters as obtaining an understanding of:

- (a) The relevant industry, regulatory, and other external factors;
- (b) The nature of the entity;
- (c) The entity's selection and application of accounting policies;
- (d) The entity's objectives and strategies;
- (e) The measurement and review of the entity's financial performance; and
- (f) The entity's internal control.

A32. The auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit may also include matters that are prospective in nature. Such matters may include, for example, business prospects and future cash flows that the auditor considered when evaluating the assumptions used by management in performing impairment tests on intangible assets such as goodwill, or when evaluating management's assessment of the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.

A33. In considering whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit, the auditor may focus on those matters in the other information that are of sufficient importance that a misstatement of the other information in relation to that matter could be material.

¹¹ ISA 315 (Revised), *Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment*, paragraphs 11–12

- A34. In relation to many matters in the other information, the auditor's recollection of the audit evidence obtained and conclusions reached in the audit may be sufficient to enable the auditor to consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit. The more experienced and the more familiar with the key aspects of the audit the auditor is, the more likely it is that the auditor's recollection of relevant matters will be sufficient. For example, the auditor may be able to consider whether there is a material inconsistency between the other information and the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit in light of the auditor's recollection of discussions held with management or those charged with governance or findings from procedures carried out during the audit such as the reading of board minutes, without the need to take further action.
- A35. The auditor may determine that referring to relevant audit documentation or making inquiries of relevant members of the engagement team or relevant component auditors is appropriate as a basis for the auditor's consideration of whether a material inconsistency exists. For example:
- When the other information describes the planned cessation of a major product line and, although the auditor is aware of the planned cessation, the auditor may make inquiries of the relevant engagement team member who performed the audit procedures in this area to support the auditor's consideration of whether the description is materially inconsistent with the auditor's knowledge obtained during the audit.
 - When the other information describes important details of a lawsuit addressed in the audit, but the auditor cannot recall them adequately, it may be necessary to refer to the audit documentation where such details are summarized to support the auditor's recollection.
- A36. Whether, and if so the extent to which, the auditor refers to relevant audit documentation, or makes inquiries of relevant members of the engagement team or relevant component auditors is a matter of professional judgment. However, it may not be necessary for the auditor to refer to relevant audit documentation, or to make inquiries of relevant members of the engagement team or relevant component auditors about any matter included in the other information.

Remaining Alert for Other Indications that the Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated (Ref: Para. 15)

- A37. Other information may include discussion of matters that are not related to the financial statements and may also extend beyond the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit. For example, the other information may include statements about the entity's greenhouse gas emissions.
- A38. Remaining alert for other indications that the other information not related to the financial statements or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit appears to be materially misstated assists the auditor in complying with relevant ethical requirements that require the auditor to avoid being knowingly associated with other information that the auditor believes contains a materially false or misleading statement, a statement furnished recklessly, or omits or obscures necessary information such that the other information is misleading.¹² Remaining alert for other indications that the other information appears to be materially misstated could potentially result in the auditor identifying such matters as:
- Differences between the other information and the general knowledge, apart from the knowledge obtained in the audit, of the engagement team member reading the other

¹² IESBA Code, paragraph 110.2

information that lead the auditor to believe that the other information appears to be materially misstated; or

- An internal inconsistency in the other information that leads the auditor to believe that the other information appears to be materially misstated.

Responding When a Material Inconsistency Appears to Exist or Other Information Appears to Be Materially Misstated (Ref: Para. 16)

- A39. The auditor's discussion with management about a material inconsistency (or other information that appears to be materially misstated) may include requesting management to provide support for the basis of management's statements in the other information. Based on management's further information or explanations, the auditor may be satisfied that the other information is not materially misstated. For example, management explanations may indicate reasonable and sufficient grounds for valid differences of judgment.
- A40. Conversely, the discussion with management may provide further information that supports the auditor's conclusion that a material misstatement of the other information exists.
- A41. It may be more difficult for the auditor to challenge management on matters of judgment than on those of a more factual nature. However, there may be circumstances where the auditor concludes that the other information contains a statement that is not consistent with the financial statements or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit. These circumstances may raise doubt about the other information, the financial statements, or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit.
- A42. As there is a wide range of possible material misstatements of the other information, the nature and extent of other procedures the auditor may perform to conclude whether a material misstatement of the other information exists are matters of the auditor's professional judgment in the circumstances.
- A43. When a matter is unrelated to the financial statements or the auditor's knowledge obtained in the audit, the auditor may not be able to fully assess management's responses to the auditor's inquiries. Nevertheless, based on management's further information or explanations, or following changes made by management to the other information, the auditor may be satisfied that a material inconsistency no longer appears to exist or that the other information no longer appears to be materially misstated. When the auditor is unable to conclude that a material inconsistency no longer appears to exist or that the other information no longer appears to be materially misstated, the auditor may request management to consult with a qualified third party (for example, a management's expert or legal counsel). In certain cases, after considering the responses from management's consultation, the auditor may not be able to conclude whether or not a material misstatement of the other information exists. Actions the auditor may then take include one or more of the following:
- Obtaining advice from the auditor's legal counsel;
 - Considering the implications for the auditor's report for example, whether to describe the circumstances when there is a limitation imposed by management; or
 - Withdrawing from the audit, where withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation.

Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement of the Other Information Exists

Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement Exists in Other Information Obtained prior to the Date of the Auditor's Report (Ref: Para. 18)

A44. The actions the auditor takes if the other information is not corrected after communicating with those charged with governance are a matter of the auditor's professional judgment. The auditor may take into account whether the rationale given by management and those charged with governance for not making the correction raises doubt about the integrity or honesty of management or those charged with governance, such as when the auditor suspects an intention to mislead. The auditor may also consider it appropriate to seek legal advice. In some cases, the auditor may be required by law, regulation or other professional standards to communicate the matter to a regulator or relevant professional body.

Reporting Implications (Ref: Para. 18(a))

A45. In rare circumstances, a disclaimer of opinion on the financial statements may be appropriate when the refusal to correct the material misstatement of the other information casts such doubt on the integrity of management and those charged with governance as to call into question the reliability of audit evidence in general.

Withdrawal from the Engagement (Ref: Para. 18(b))

A46. Withdrawal from the engagement, where withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation, may be appropriate when the circumstances surrounding the refusal to correct the material misstatement of the other information cast such doubt on the integrity of management and those charged with governance as to call into question the reliability of representations obtained from them during the audit.

Considerations specific to public sector entities (Ref: Para. 18(b))

A47. In the public sector, withdrawal from the engagement may not be possible. In such cases, the auditor may issue a report to the legislature providing details of the matter or may take other appropriate actions.

Responding When the Auditor Concludes That a Material Misstatement Exists in Other Information Obtained after the Date of the Auditor's Report (Ref: Para. 19)

A48. If the auditor concludes that a material misstatement exists in other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report, and such a material misstatement has been corrected, the auditor's procedures necessary in the circumstances include determining that the correction has been made (in accordance with paragraph 17(a)) and may include reviewing the steps taken by management to communicate with those in receipt of the other information, if previously issued, to inform them of the revision.

A49. If those charged with governance do not agree to revise the other information, taking appropriate action to seek to have the uncorrected misstatement appropriately brought to the attention of users for whom the auditor's report is prepared requires the exercise of professional judgment, and may be affected by relevant law or regulation in the jurisdiction. Accordingly, the auditor may consider it appropriate to seek legal advice about the auditor's legal rights and obligations.

A50. When a material misstatement of the other information remains uncorrected, appropriate actions that the auditor may take to seek to have the uncorrected material misstatement appropriately brought to the attention of users for whom the auditor's report is prepared, when permitted by law or regulation, include, for example:

- Providing a new or amended auditor's report to management including a modified section in accordance with paragraph 22, and requesting management to provide this new or amended auditor's report to users for whom the auditor's report is prepared. In doing so, the auditor may need to consider the effect, if any, on the date of the new or amended auditor's report, in view of the requirements of the ISAs or applicable law or regulation. The auditor may also review the steps taken by management to provide the new or amended auditor's report to such users;
- Bringing the material misstatement of the other information to the attention of the users for whom the auditor's report is prepared (for example, by addressing the matter in a general meeting of shareholders);
- Communicating with a regulator or relevant professional body about the uncorrected material misstatement; or
- Considering the implications for engagement continuance (see also paragraph A46).

Responding When a Material Misstatement in the Financial Statements Exists or the Auditor's Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment Needs to Be Updated (Ref: Para. 20)

A51. In reading the other information, the auditor may become aware of new information that has implications for:

- The auditor's understanding of the entity and its environment and, accordingly, may indicate the need to revise the auditor's risk assessment.¹³
- The auditor's responsibility to evaluate the effect of identified misstatements on the audit and of uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial statements.¹⁴
- The auditor's responsibilities relating to subsequent events.¹⁵

Reporting (Ref: Para. 21–24)

A52. For an audit of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity, the auditor may consider that the identification in the auditor's report of other information that the auditor expects to obtain after the date of the auditor's report would be appropriate in order to provide additional transparency about the other information that is subject to the auditor's responsibilities under this ISA. The auditor may consider it appropriate to do so, for example, when management is able to represent to the auditor that such other information will be issued after the date of the auditor's report.

¹³ ISA 315 (Revised), paragraphs 11, 31, and A1

¹⁴ ISA 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit*

¹⁵ ISA 560, paragraphs 10 and 14

Illustrative Statements (Ref: Para. 21–22)

A53. Illustrative examples of the “Other Information” section of the auditor's report are included in Appendix 2.

Reporting Implications When the Auditor's Opinion on the Financial Statements Is Qualified or Adverse
(Ref: Para. 23)

A54. A qualified or adverse auditor's opinion on the financial statements may not have an impact on the statement required by paragraph 22(e) if the matter in respect of which the auditor's opinion has been modified is not included or otherwise addressed in the other information and the matter does not affect any part of the other information. For example, a qualified opinion on the financial statements because of non-disclosure of directors' remuneration as required by the applicable financial reporting framework may have no implications for the reporting required under this ISA. In other circumstances, there may be implications for such reporting as described in paragraphs A55–A58.

Qualified Opinion Due to a Material Misstatement in the Financial Statements

A55. In circumstances when the auditor's opinion is qualified, consideration may be given as to whether the other information is also materially misstated for the same matter as, or a related matter to, the matter giving rise to the qualified opinion on the financial statements.

Qualified Opinion Due to Limitation of Scope

A56. When there is a limitation of scope with respect to a material item in the financial statements, the auditor will not have obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence about that matter. In these circumstances, the auditor may be unable to conclude whether or not the amounts or other items in the other information related to this matter result in a material misstatement of the other information. Accordingly, the auditor may need to modify the statement required by paragraph 22(e) to refer to the auditor's inability to consider management's description of the matter in the other information in respect of which the auditor's opinion on the financial statements has been qualified as explained in the Basis for Qualified Opinion paragraph. The auditor is nevertheless required to report any other uncorrected material misstatements of the other information that have been identified.

Adverse Opinion

A57. An adverse opinion on the financial statements relating to a specific matter(s) described in the Basis for Adverse Opinion paragraph does not justify the omission of reporting of material misstatements of the other information that the auditor has identified in the auditor's report in accordance with paragraph 22(e)(ii). When an adverse opinion has been expressed on the financial statements, the auditor may need to appropriately modify the statement required by paragraph 22(e) for example, to indicate that amounts or items in the other information is materially misstated for the same matter as, or a related matter to, the matter giving rise to the adverse opinion on the financial statements.

Disclaimer of Opinion

A58. When the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements, providing further details about the audit, including a section to address other information may overshadow the disclaimer of opinion on the financial statements as a whole. Accordingly, in those circumstances, as required by ISA 705 (Revised), the auditor's report does not include a section addressing the reporting requirements under this ISA.

Reporting Prescribed by Law or Regulation (Ref: Para. 24)

A59. ISA 200¹⁶ explains that the auditor may be required to comply with legal or regulatory requirements in addition to the ISAs. Where this is the case, the auditor may be obliged to use a specific layout or wording in the auditor's report that differs from that described in this ISA. Consistency in the auditor's report, when the audit has been conducted in accordance with ISAs, promotes credibility in the global marketplace by making more readily identifiable those audits that have been conducted in accordance with globally recognized standards. When the differences between the legal or regulatory requirements to report with respect to the other information and this ISA relate only to the layout and wording in the auditor's report and, at a minimum, each of the elements identified in paragraph 24 is included in the auditor's report, the auditor's report may refer to International Standards on Auditing. Accordingly, in such circumstances the auditor is considered to have complied with the requirements of this ISA, even when the layout and wording used in the auditor's report are specified by legal or regulatory reporting requirements.

¹⁶ ISA 200, paragraph A55

Appendix 1

(Ref: Para. 14, A8)

Examples of Amounts or Other Items that May Be Included in the Other Information

The following are examples of amounts and other items that may be included in other information. This list is not intended to be exhaustive.

Amounts

- Items in a summary of key financial results, such as net income, earnings per share, dividends, sales and other operating revenues, and purchases and operating expenses.
- Selected operating data, such as income from continuing operations by major operating area, or sales by geographical segment or product line.
- Special items, such as asset dispositions, litigation provisions, asset impairments, tax adjustments, environmental remediation provisions, and restructuring and reorganization expenses.
- Liquidity and capital resource information, such as cash, cash equivalents and marketable securities; dividends; and debt, capital lease and minority interest obligations.
- Capital expenditures by segment or division.
- Amounts involved in, and related financial effects of, off-balance sheet arrangements.
- Amounts involved in guarantees, contractual obligations, legal or environmental claims, and other contingencies.
- Financial measures or ratios, such as gross margin, return on average capital employed, return on average shareholders' equity, current ratio, interest coverage ratio and debt ratio. Some of these may be directly reconcilable to the financial statements.

Other Items

- Explanations of critical accounting estimates and related assumptions.
- Identification of related parties and descriptions of transactions with them.
- Articulation of the entity's policies or approach to manage commodity, foreign exchange or interest rate risks, such as through the use of forward contracts, interest rate swaps, or other financial instruments.
- Descriptions of the nature of off-balance sheet arrangements.
- Descriptions of guarantees, indemnifications, contractual obligations, litigation or environmental liability cases, and other contingencies, including management's qualitative assessments of the entity's related exposures.
- Descriptions of changes in legal or regulatory requirements, such as new tax or environmental regulations, that have materially impacted the entity's operations or fiscal position, or will have a material impact on the entity's future financial prospects.

- Management's qualitative assessments of the impacts of new financial reporting standards that have come into effect during the period, or will come into effect in the following period, on the entity's financial results, financial position and cash flows.
- General descriptions of the business environment and outlook.
- Overview of strategy.
- Descriptions of trends in market prices of key commodities or raw materials.
- Contrasts of supply, demand and regulatory circumstances between geographic regions.
- Explanations of specific factors influencing the entity's profitability in specific segments.

Appendix 2

(Ref: Para. 21–22, A53)

Illustrations of Auditor's Reports Relating to Other Information

- Illustration 1: An auditor's report of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Illustration 2: An auditor's report of a listed entity containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Illustration 3: An auditor's report of an entity other than a listed entity containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Illustration 4: An auditor's report of a listed entity containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained no other information prior to the date of the auditor's report but expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Illustration 5: An auditor's report of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has concluded that a material misstatement of the other information exists.
- Illustration 6: An auditor's report of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, containing a qualified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and there is a limitation of scope with respect to a material item in the consolidated financial statements which also affects the other information.
- Illustration 7: An auditor's report of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, containing an adverse opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the adverse opinion on the consolidated financial statements also affects the other information.

Illustration 1 – An auditor's report of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600¹ does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).²
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ISA 701.³
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements⁴

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

¹ ISA 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*

² ISA 570 (Revised), *Going Concern*

³ ISA 701, *Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor's Report*. The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

⁴ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (or) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

[Key Audit Matters]⁵

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ISA 701.]

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

Management⁶ is responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,⁷ but does not include the financial statements and our auditor's report thereon.]

Our opinion on the financial statements does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial statements, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial statements or our knowledge obtained in the audit or otherwise appears to be materially misstated. If, based on the work we have performed, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. We have nothing to report in this regard.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements⁸

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised)⁹ – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

⁵ The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

⁶ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

⁷ A more specific description of the other information, such as "the management report and chairman's statement," may be used to identify the other information.

⁸ Throughout these illustrative auditor's reports, the terms management and those charged with governance may need to be replaced by another term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.

⁹ ISA 700 (Revised), *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

[The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor's report is *[name]*.¹⁰]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

¹⁰ The name of the engagement partner is included in the auditor's report for audits of complete sets of general purpose financial statements of listed entities unless, in rare circumstances, such disclosure is reasonably expected to lead to a significant personal security threat (see ISA 700 (Revised), paragraph 46).

Illustration 2 – An auditor's report of a listed entity containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements¹¹

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

¹¹ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ISA 701.]

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

Management¹² is responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the X report¹³ (but does not include the financial statements and our auditor's report thereon), which we obtained prior to the date of this auditor's report, and the Y report, which is expected to be made available to us after that date.

Our opinion on the financial statements does not cover the other information and we do not and will not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial statements, our responsibility is to read the other information identified above and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial statements or our knowledge obtained in the audit, or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

If, based on the work we have performed on the other information that we obtained prior to the date of this auditor's report, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. We have nothing to report in this regard.

[When we read the Y report, if we conclude that there is a material misstatement therein, we are required to communicate the matter to those charged with governance and [describe actions applicable in the jurisdiction]]¹⁴

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements¹⁵

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

¹² Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

¹³ A more specific description of the other information, such as "the management report and chair's statement," may be used to identify the other information.

¹⁴ This additional paragraph may be useful when the auditor has identified an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report and has a legal obligation to take specific action in response.

¹⁵ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor's report is *[name]*.¹⁶

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

¹⁶ The name of the engagement partner is included in the auditor's report for audits of complete sets of general purpose financial statements of listed entities unless, in rare circumstances, such disclosure is reasonably expected to lead to a significant personal security threat (see ISA 700 (Revised), paragraph 46).

Illustration 3 – An auditor's report of an entity other than a listed entity containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained part of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, has not identified a material misstatement of the other information, and expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- The auditor has no other reporting responsibilities required under law or regulation.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements*

section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as “Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

Management¹⁷ is responsible for the other information. The other information obtained at the date of this auditor’s report is [information included in the X report,¹⁸ but does not include the financial statements and our auditor’s report thereon]

Our opinion on the financial statements does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial statements, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial statements or our knowledge obtained in the audit, or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

If, based on the work we have performed on the other information obtained prior to the date of this auditor’s report, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. We have nothing to report in this regard.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements¹⁹

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

¹⁷ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

¹⁸ A more specific description of the other information, such as “the management report and chair’s statement,” may be used to identify the other information.

¹⁹ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

Illustration 4 – An auditor's report of a listed entity containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained no other information prior to the date of the auditor's report but expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained no other information prior to the date of the auditor's report but expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements²⁰

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

²⁰ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ISA 701.]

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

Management²¹ is responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,²² but does not include the financial statements and our auditor's report thereon]. The X report is expected to be made available to us after the date of this auditor's report.

Our opinion on the financial statements does not cover the other information and we will not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial statements, our responsibility is to read the other information identified above when it becomes available and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial statements or our knowledge obtained in the audit, or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

[When we read the X report, if we conclude that there is a material misstatement therein, we are required to communicate the matter to those charged with governance and [describe actions applicable in the jurisdiction].]²³

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements²⁴

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

²¹ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

²² A more specific description of the other information, such as "the management report and chair's statement," may be used to identify the other information.

²³ This additional paragraph may be useful when the auditor has identified an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report and has a legal obligation to take specific action in response.

²⁴ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor's report is *[name]*.

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

Illustration 5 – An auditor's report of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has concluded that a material misstatement of the other information exists.

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has concluded that a material misstatement of the other information exists
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- The auditor has no other reporting responsibilities required under law or regulation.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical

responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as “Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

Management²⁵ is responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,²⁶ but does not include the financial statements and our auditor’s report thereon.]

Our opinion on the financial statements does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the financial statements, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the financial statements or our knowledge obtained in the audit or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

If, based on the work we have performed, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. As described below, we have concluded that such a material misstatement of the other information exists.

[Description of material misstatement of the other information]

[Key Audit Matters]²⁷

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ISA 701.]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements²⁸

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

[The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor’s report is [name].²⁹]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

²⁵ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

²⁶ A more specific description of the other information, such as “the management report and chairman’s statement,” may be used to identify the other information.

²⁷ The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

²⁸ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

²⁹ The name of the engagement partner is included in the auditor’s report for audits of complete sets of general purpose financial statements of listed entities unless, in rare circumstances, such disclosure is reasonably expected to lead to a significant personal security threat (see ISA 700 (Revised), paragraph 46).

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

Illustration 6 – An auditor's report of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, containing an qualified opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and there is a limitation of scope with respect to a material item in the consolidated financial statements which also affects the other information.

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of consolidated financial statements of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, using a fair presentation framework. The audit is a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 applies).
- The consolidated financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the consolidated financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding an investment in a foreign associate. The possible effects of the inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence are deemed to be material but not pervasive to the consolidated financial statements (i.e., a qualified opinion is appropriate).
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the qualified opinion on the consolidated financial statements also affects the other information
- Those responsible for oversight of the consolidated financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the consolidated financial statements.
- The auditor has no other reporting responsibilities required under law or regulation.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Qualified Opinion

We have audited the consolidated financial statements of ABC Company and its subsidiaries (the Group), which comprise the consolidated statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the consolidated statement of comprehensive income, consolidated statement of changes in equity and consolidated statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the consolidated financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, except for the possible effects of the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Group as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its consolidated financial performance and its consolidated cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Qualified Opinion

The Group's investment in XYZ Company, a foreign associate acquired during the year and accounted for by the equity method, is carried at xxx on the consolidated statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and ABC's share of XYZ's net income of xxx is included in ABC's income for the year then ended. We were unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the carrying amount of ABC's investment in XYZ as at December 31, 20X1 and ABC's share of XYZ's net income for the year because we were denied access to the financial information, management, and the auditors of XYZ. Consequently, we were unable to determine whether any adjustments to these amounts were necessary.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Group in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the consolidated financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

Management³⁰ is responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,³¹ but does not include the consolidated financial statements and our auditor's report thereon.]

Our opinion on the consolidated financial statements does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the consolidated financial statements, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the consolidated financial statements or our knowledge obtained in the audit or otherwise appears to be materially misstated.

If, based on the work we have performed, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. As described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section above, we were unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence about the carrying amount of ABC's investment in XYZ as at December 31, 20X1 and ABC's share of XYZ's net income for the year. Accordingly, we are unable to conclude whether or not the other information is materially misstated with respect to this matter.

[Key Audit Matters]³²

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the consolidated financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the consolidated financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters. In addition to the matter described in the *Basis for*

³⁰ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

³¹ A more specific description of the other information, such as "the management report and chairman's statement," may be used to identify the other information.

³² The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

Qualified Opinion section we have determined the matters described below to be the key audit matters to be communicated in our report.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ISA 701.]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements³³

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

[The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor's report is [name].³⁴

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

³³ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

³⁴ The name of the engagement partner is included in the auditor's report for audits of complete sets of general purpose financial statements of listed entities unless, in rare circumstances, such disclosure is reasonably expected to lead to a significant personal security threat (see ISA 700 (Revised), paragraph 46).

Illustration 7 – An auditor's report of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, containing an adverse opinion when the auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the adverse opinion on the consolidated financial statements also affects the other information.

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of consolidated financial statements of any entity, whether listed or other than listed, using a fair presentation framework. The audit is a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 applies).
- The consolidated financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the consolidated financial statements in ISA 210.
- The consolidated financial statements are materially misstated due to the non-consolidation of a subsidiary. The material misstatement is deemed to be pervasive to the consolidated financial statements. The effects of the misstatement on the consolidated financial statements have not been determined because it was not practicable to do so (i.e., an adverse opinion is appropriate).
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the adverse opinion on the consolidated financial statements also affects the other information
- Those responsible for oversight of the consolidated financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the consolidated financial statements.
- The auditor has no other reporting responsibilities required under law or regulation.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Adverse Opinion

We have audited the consolidated financial statements of ABC Company and its subsidiaries (the Group), which comprise the consolidated statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the consolidated statement of comprehensive income, consolidated statement of changes in equity and consolidated statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the consolidated financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, because of the significance of the matter discussed in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying consolidated financial statements do not present fairly (or *do not give a true and fair view of*) the consolidated financial position of the Group as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its consolidated financial performance and its consolidated cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Adverse Opinion

As explained in Note X, the Group has not consolidated subsidiary XYZ Company that the Group acquired during 20X1 because it has not yet been able to determine the fair values of certain of the subsidiary's material assets and liabilities at the acquisition date. This investment is therefore accounted for on a cost basis. Under IFRSs, the Group should have consolidated this subsidiary and accounted for the acquisition based on provisional amounts. Had XYZ Company been consolidated, many elements in the accompanying consolidated financial statements would have been materially affected. The effects on the consolidated financial statements of the failure to consolidate have not been determined.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Group in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the consolidated financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our adverse opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate, such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

Management³⁵ is responsible for the other information. The other information comprises the [information included in the X report,³⁶ but does not include the consolidated financial statements and our auditor's report thereon.]

Our opinion on the consolidated financial statements does not cover the other information and we do not express any form of assurance conclusion thereon.

In connection with our audit of the consolidated financial statements, our responsibility is to read the other information and, in doing so, consider whether the other information is materially inconsistent with the consolidated financial statements or our knowledge obtained in the audit or otherwise appears to be materially misstated. If, based on the work we have performed, we conclude that there is a material misstatement of this other information, we are required to report that fact. As described in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* section above, the Group should have consolidated XYZ Company and accounted for the acquisition based on provisional amounts. We have concluded that the other information is materially misstated for the same reason with respect to the amounts or other items in the X report affected by the failure to consolidate XYZ Company.

[Key Audit Matters³⁷

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the consolidated financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the consolidated financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters. In addition to the matter described in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* section we have determined the matters described below to be the key audit matters to be communicated in our report.

³⁵ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

³⁶ A more specific description of the other information, such as "the management report and chairman's statement," may be used to identify the other information.

³⁷ The Key Audit Matters section is required for listed entities only.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ISA 701.]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements³⁸

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

[The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor's report is [name].³⁹]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

³⁸ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

³⁹ The name of the engagement partner is included in the auditor's report for audits of complete sets of general purpose financial statements of listed entities unless, in rare circumstances, such disclosure is reasonably expected to lead to a significant personal security threat (see ISA 700 (Revised), paragraph 46).

CONFORMING AMENDMENTS TO OTHER ISAs

Note: The following are conforming amendments to other ISAs as a result of the approval of ISA 720 (Revised). These amendments will become effective at the same time as ISA 720 (Revised), and are shown with marked changes from the latest approved versions of the ISAs that are amended, included the new and revised Auditor Reporting standards released in January 2015. The footnote numbers within these amendments do not align with the ISAs that are amended, and reference should be made to those ISAs.

ISA 210, Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Additional Information (Ref: Para. (b)(iii)(b))

A19a. Additional information that the auditor may request from management for the purpose of the audit may include when applicable, matters related to other information in accordance with ISA 720 (Revised). When the auditor expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report, the terms of the audit engagement may also acknowledge the auditor's responsibilities relating to such other information including, if applicable, the actions that may be appropriate or necessary if the auditor concludes that a material misstatement of the other information exists in other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report.*

Appendix 1

Example of an Audit Engagement Letter

[Reporting]

[Insert appropriate reference to the expected form and content of the auditor's report including, if applicable, the reporting on other information in accordance with ISA 720 (Revised).]

The form and content of our report may need to be amended in the light of our audit findings.

ISA 230, Audit Documentation

Appendix

(Ref: Para. 1)

Specific Audit Documentation Requirements in Other ISAs

This appendix identifies paragraphs in other ISAs that contain specific documentation requirements. The list is not a substitute for considering the requirements and related application and other explanatory material in ISAs.

...

- ISA 610 (Revised 2013), *Using the Work of Internal Auditors* – paragraphs 36–37
- ISA 720 (Revised), *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* – paragraph 25

* When the conforming amendment becomes effective, this paragraph will become paragraph A20 and all subsequent paragraphs will be renumbered accordingly.

ISA 260 (Revised), Communication with Those Charged with Governance

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Planned Scope and Timing of the Audit (Ref: Para. 15)

...

A14. Other planning matters that it may be appropriate to discuss with those charged with governance include:

- Where the entity has an internal audit function, how the external auditor and internal auditors can work together in a constructive and complementary manner, including any planned use of the work of the internal audit function, and the nature and extent of any planned use of internal auditors to provide direct assistance.⁵⁶
- The views of those charged with governance of:
 - The appropriate person(s) in the entity's governance structure with whom to communicate.
 - The allocation of responsibilities between those charged with governance and management.
 - The entity's objectives and strategies, and the related business risks that may result in material misstatements.
 - Matters those charged with governance consider warrant particular attention during the audit, and any areas where they request additional procedures to be undertaken.
 - Significant communications with regulators.
 - Other matters those charged with governance consider may influence the audit of the financial statements.
- The attitudes, awareness, and actions of those charged with governance concerning (a) the entity's internal control and its importance in the entity, including how those charged with governance oversee the effectiveness of internal control, and (b) the detection or possibility of fraud.
- The actions of those charged with governance in response to developments in accounting standards, corporate governance practices, exchange listing rules, and related matters.
- The responses of those charged with governance to previous communications with the auditor.
- The documents comprising the other information (as defined in ISA 720 (Revised)) and the planned manner and timing of the issuance of such documents. When the auditor expects to obtain other information after the date of the auditor's report, the discussions with those charged with governance may also include the actions that may be appropriate or necessary if the auditor concludes that a material misstatement of the other information exists in other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report.

⁵⁶ ISA 610 (Revised), *Using the Work of Internal Auditors*, paragraph 18, and ISA 610 (Revised 2013), *Using the Work of Internal Auditors*, paragraph 31

Significant Findings from the Audit (Ref: Para. 16)

...

Circumstances that Affect the Form and Content of the Auditor's Report (Ref: Para 16(d))

...

A24. Circumstances in which the auditor is required or may otherwise consider it necessary to include additional information in the auditor's report in accordance with the ISAs, and for which communication with those charged with governance is required, include when:

- The auditor expects to modify the opinion in the auditor's report in accordance with ISA 705 (Revised).⁵⁷
- A material uncertainty related to going concern is reported in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).⁵⁸
- Key audit matters are communicated in accordance with ISA 701.⁵⁹
- The auditor considers it necessary to include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph or Other Matters paragraph in accordance with ISA 706 (Revised)⁶⁰ or is required to do so by other ISAs.
- The auditor has concluded that there is an uncorrected material misstatement of the other information in accordance with ISA 720 (Revised).⁶¹

In such circumstances, the auditor may consider it useful to provide those charged with governance with a draft of the auditor's report to facilitate a discussion of how such matters will be addressed in the auditor's report.

...

Other Significant Matters Relevant to the Financial Reporting Process (Ref: Para. 16(e))

...

A27. Other significant matters arising ~~from~~ during the audit that are directly relevant to those charged with governance in overseeing the financial reporting process may include such matters as material misstatements of fact or material inconsistencies in information accompanying the audited financial statements ~~the other information that have been corrected.~~

⁵⁷ ISA 705 (Revised), *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraph 30

⁵⁸ ISA 570 (Revised), *Going Concern*, paragraph 25(d)

⁵⁹ ISA 701, paragraph 17

⁶⁰ ISA 706 (Revised), *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraph 12

⁶¹ ISA 720 (Revised), *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information*, paragraph 18(a)

Appendix 1

(Ref: Para. 3)

Specific Requirements in ISQC 1 and Other ISAs that Refer to Communications with Those Charged With Governance

This appendix identifies paragraphs in ISQC 1⁶² and other ISAs that require communication of specific matters with those charged with governance. The list is not a substitute for considering the requirements and related application and other explanatory material in ISAs.

- ISA 720 (Revised), *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information* – paragraph 17–19.

ISA 450, Evaluation of Misstatements Identified during the Audit**Application and Other Explanatory Material****Evaluating the Effect of Uncorrected Misstatements** (Ref: Para. 10–11)

A16. The circumstances related to some misstatements may cause the auditor to evaluate them as material, individually or when considered together with other misstatements accumulated during the audit, even if they are lower than materiality for the financial statements as a whole. Circumstances that may affect the evaluation include the extent to which the misstatement:

...

- ~~Affects other information that will be communicated to be included in the entity's annual report documents containing the audited financial statements~~ (for example, information to be included in a "Management Discussion and Analysis" or an "Operating and Financial Review") that may reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of the users of the financial statements. ISA 720 (Revised)⁶³ deals with the auditor's responsibilities relating to consideration of other information, on which the auditor has no obligation to report, in documents containing audited financial statements.

ISA 500, Audit Evidence**Definitions**

5. For purposes of the ISAs, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:

- (c) Audit evidence – Information used by the auditor in arriving at the conclusions on which the auditor's opinion is based. Audit evidence includes both information contained in the accounting records underlying the financial statements and ~~other information~~ obtained from other sources.

⁶² ISQC 1, *Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Financial Statements, and Other Assurance and Related Services Engagements*

⁶³ ISA 720 (Revised), *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*

ISA 510, Initial Audit Engagements—Opening Balances**Appendix**

(Ref: Para. A8)

Illustrations of Auditor's Reports with Modified Opinions**Illustration 1:**

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600⁶⁴ does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs) (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.⁶⁵
- The auditor did not observe the counting of the physical inventory at the beginning of the current period and was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the opening balances of inventory.
- The possible effects of the inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding opening balances of inventory are deemed to be material but not pervasive to the entity's financial performance and cash flows.⁶⁶
- The financial position at year end is fairly presented.
- In this particular jurisdiction, law and regulation prohibit the auditor from giving an opinion which is qualified regarding the financial performance and cash flows and unmodified regarding financial position.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).⁶⁷
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ISA 701.⁶⁸
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Corresponding figures are presented, and the prior period's financial statements were audited by a predecessor auditor. The auditor is not prohibited by law or regulation from referring to the predecessor auditor's report on the corresponding figures and has decided to do so.

⁶⁴ ISA 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*

⁶⁵ ISA 210, *Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements*

⁶⁶ If the possible effects, in the auditor's judgment, are considered to be material and pervasive to the entity's financial performance and cash flows, the auditor would disclaim an opinion on the financial performance and cash flows.

⁶⁷ ISA 570 (Revised), *Going Concern*

⁶⁸ ISA 701, *Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor's Report*

- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements⁶⁹

Qualified Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, except for the possible effects of the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Qualified Opinion

We were appointed as auditors of the company on June 30, 20X1 and thus did not observe the counting of the physical inventories at the beginning of the year. We were unable to satisfy ourselves by alternative means concerning inventory quantities held at December 31, 20X0. Since opening inventories enter into the determination of the financial performance and cash flows, we were unable to determine whether adjustments might have been necessary in respect of the profit for the year reported in the statement of comprehensive income and the net cash flows from operating activities reported in the statement of cash flows.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified opinion.

⁶⁹ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

Other Matter

The financial statements of the Company for the year ended December 31, 20X0 were audited by another auditor who expressed an unmodified opinion on those statements on March 31, 20X1.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as “Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised).]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements⁷⁰

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised)⁷¹ – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

Illustration 2:

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor did not observe the counting of the physical inventory at the beginning of the current period and was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the opening balances of inventory.

⁷⁰ Throughout these illustrative auditor’s reports, the terms management and those charged with governance may need to be replaced by another term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.

⁷¹ ISA 700 (Revised), *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*

- The possible effects of the inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding opening balances of inventory are deemed to be material but not pervasive to the entity's financial performance and cash flows.⁷²
- The financial position at year end is fairly presented.
- An opinion that is qualified regarding the financial performance and cash flows and unmodified regarding financial position is considered appropriate in the circumstances.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Corresponding figures are presented, and the prior period's financial statements were audited by a predecessor auditor. The auditor is not prohibited by law or regulation from referring to the predecessor auditor's report on the corresponding figures and has decided to do so.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements⁷³

Opinions

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

Qualified Opinion on the Financial Performance and Cash Flows

In our opinion, except for the possible effects of the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying Statement of Comprehensive Income and Statement of Cash Flows present fairly, in all material respects (or *give a true and fair view of*), the financial performance and cash flows of the Company for the year ended December 31, 20X1 in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

⁷² If the possible effects, in the auditor's judgment, are considered to be material and pervasive to the entity's financial performance and cash flows, the auditor would disclaim the opinion on the financial performance and cash flows.

⁷³ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

Opinion on the Financial Position

In our opinion, the accompanying statement of financial position presents fairly, in all material respects (or *gives a true and fair view of*), the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1 in accordance with IFRSs.

Basis for Opinions, Including Basis for Qualified Opinion on the Financial Performance and Cash Flows

We were appointed as auditors of the Company on June 30, 20X1 and thus did not observe the counting of the physical inventories at the beginning of the year. We were unable to satisfy ourselves by alternative means concerning inventory quantities held at December 31, 20X0. Since opening inventories enter into the determination of the financial performance and cash flows, we were unable to determine whether adjustments might have been necessary in respect of the profit for the year reported in the statement of comprehensive income and the net cash flows from operating activities reported in the statement of cash flows.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our unmodified opinion on the financial position and our qualified audit opinion on the financial performance and cash flows.

Other Matter

The financial statements of the Company for the year ended December 31, 20X0 were audited by another auditor who expressed an unmodified opinion on those statements on March 31, 20X1.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised)—see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised)]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements⁷⁴

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

⁷⁴ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

ISA 560, Subsequent Events

Introduction

Scope of this ISA

1. This International Standard on Auditing (ISA) deals with the auditor's responsibilities relating to subsequent events in an audit of financial statements. It does not deal with matters relating to the auditor's responsibilities for other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report, which are addressed in ISA 720 (Revised).⁷⁵ However, such other information may bring to light a subsequent event that is within the scope of this ISA. (Ref: Para. A1)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of this ISA (Ref: Para. 1)

- A1. When the audited financial statements are included in other documents subsequent to the issuance of the financial statements (other than annual reports that would be within the scope of ISA 720 (Revised)), the auditor may have additional responsibilities relating to subsequent events that the auditor may need to consider, such as legal or regulatory requirements involving the offering of securities to the public in jurisdictions in which the securities are being offered. For example, the auditor may be required to perform additional audit procedures to the date of the final offering document. These procedures may include those referred to in paragraphs 6 and 7 performed up to a date at or near the effective date of the final offering document, and reading the offering document to assess whether the other information in the offering document is consistent with the financial information with which the auditor is associated.

Facts Which Become Known to the Auditor after the Date of the Auditor's Report but before the Date the Financial Statements Are Issued

Implications of Other Information Obtained after the Date of the Auditor's Report (Ref: Para. 10)

- A10a. While the auditor has no obligation to perform any audit procedures regarding the financial statements after the date of the auditor's report but before the date the financial statements are issued, ISA 720 (Revised) contains requirements and guidance with respect to other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report, which might include other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report, but before the date the financial statements are issued.*

...

⁷⁵ ISA 720 (Revised), The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information

* When the conforming amendment becomes effective, this paragraph will become paragraph A11 and all subsequent paragraphs will be renumbered accordingly.

Facts Which Become Known to the Auditor after the Financial Statements Have Been Issued

Implications of Other Information Received after the Financial Statements Have Been Issued (Ref: Para. 14)

A16a. The auditor's obligations regarding other information received after the date of the auditor's report are addressed in ISA 720 (Revised). While the auditor has no obligation to perform any audit procedures regarding the financial statements after the financial statements have been issued, ISA 720 (Revised) contains requirements and guidance with respect to other information obtained after the date of the auditor's report.*

ISA 570 (Revised), Going Concern

Appendix

(Ref: Para. A29, A31–A32)

Illustrations of Auditor's Reports Relating to Going Concern

- Illustration 1: An auditor's report containing an unmodified opinion when the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty exists and disclosure in the financial statements is adequate.
- Illustration 2: An auditor's report containing a qualified opinion when the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty exists and that the financial statements are materially misstated due to inadequate disclosure.
- Illustration 3: An auditor's report containing an adverse opinion when the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty exists and the financial statements omit the required disclosures relating to a material uncertainty.

Illustration 1 – Unmodified Opinion When a Material Uncertainty Exists and Disclosure in the Financial Statements Is Adequate

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600⁷⁶ does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.⁷⁷
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.

* When the conforming amendment becomes effective, this paragraph will become paragraph A17 and all subsequent paragraphs will be renumbered accordingly.

⁷⁶ ISA 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*

⁷⁷ ISA 210, *Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements*

- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern. The disclosure of the material uncertainty in the financial statements is adequate.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements⁷⁸

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Material Uncertainty Related to Going Concern

We draw attention to Note 6 in the financial statements, which indicates that the Company incurred a net loss of ZZZ during the year ended December 31, 20X1 and, as of that date, the Company's current liabilities exceeded its total assets by YYY. As stated in Note 6, these events or conditions, along with other matters as set forth in Note 6, indicate that a material uncertainty exists that may cast significant doubt on the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. Our opinion is not modified in respect of this matter.

⁷⁸ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters. In addition to the matter described in the *Material Uncertainty Related to Going Concern* section, we have determined the matters described below to be the key audit matters to be communicated in our report.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ISA 701.]

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as “Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised).]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements⁷⁹

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).⁸⁰]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).⁸⁰]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor’s report is *[name]*.

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

⁷⁹ Throughout these illustrative auditor’s reports, the terms management and those charged with governance may need to be replaced by another term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.

⁸⁰ Paragraphs 3334 and 3839 of ISA 700 (Revised) require wording to be included in the auditor’s report for all entities in relation to going concern to describe the respective responsibilities of those responsible for the financial statements and the auditor in relation to going concern.

Illustration 2 – Qualified Opinion When a Material Uncertainty Exists and the Financial Statements Are Materially Misstated Due to Inadequate Disclosure

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern. Note yy to the financial statements discusses the magnitude of financing arrangements, the expiration and the total financing arrangements; however the financial statements do not include discussion on the impact or the availability of refinancing or characterize this situation as a material uncertainty.
- The financial statements are materially misstated due to the inadequate disclosure of the material uncertainty. A qualified opinion is being expressed because the auditor concluded that the effects on the financial statements of this inadequate disclosure are material but not pervasive to the financial statements.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the qualified opinion on the financial statements also affects the other information
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements⁸¹

Qualified Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

⁸¹ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

In our opinion, except for the incomplete disclosure of the information referred to in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects (or *give a true and fair view of*), the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Qualified Opinion

As discussed in Note yy, the Company's financing arrangements expire and amounts outstanding are payable on March 19, 20X2. The Company has been unable to conclude re-negotiations or obtain replacement financing. This situation indicates that a material uncertainty exists that may cast significant doubt on the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. The financial statements do not adequately disclose this matter.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised) – see Illustration 6 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised). The last paragraph of the other information section in Illustration 6 would be customized to describe the specific matter giving rise to the qualified opinion that also affects the other information.]

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters. In addition to the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section, we have determined the matters described below to be the key audit matters to be communicated in our report.

[Descriptions of each key audit matter in accordance with ISA 701.]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements⁸²

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).⁸³]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).⁸³]

⁸² Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction.

⁸³ Paragraphs 3334 and 3839 of ISA 700 (Revised) require wording to be included in the auditor's report for all entities in relation to going concern to describe the respective responsibilities of those responsible for the financial statements and the auditor in relation to going concern.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor's report is *[name]*.

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

Illustration 3 – Adverse Opinion When a Material Uncertainty Exists and Is Not Disclosed in the Financial Statements

For purposes of the illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, and the Company is considering bankruptcy. The financial statements omit the required disclosures relating to the material uncertainty. An adverse opinion is being expressed because the effects on the financial statements of such omission are material and pervasive.
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the qualified/adverse opinion on the consolidated financial statements also affects the other information
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements⁸⁴

Adverse Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, because of the omission of the information mentioned in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying financial statements do not present fairly (or *do not give a true and fair view of*), the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and of its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Adverse Opinion

The Company's financing arrangements expired and the amount outstanding was payable on December 31, 20X1. The Company has been unable to conclude re-negotiations or obtain replacement financing and is considering filing for bankruptcy. This situation indicates that a material uncertainty exists that may cast significant doubt on the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. The financial statements do not adequately disclose this fact.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our adverse opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised) – see Illustration 7 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised). The last paragraph of the other information section in Illustration 7 would be customized to describe the specific matter giving rise to the qualified opinion that also affects the other information.]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements⁸⁵

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).⁸⁶]

⁸⁴ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

⁸⁵ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction.

⁸⁶ Paragraphs 3334 and 3839 of ISA 700 (Revised) require wording to be included in the auditor's report for all entities in relation to going concern to describe the respective responsibilities of those responsible for the financial statements and the auditor in relation to going concern.

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).¹¹]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

ISA 580, Written Representations

Appendix 1

(Ref: Para. 2)

List of ISAs Containing Requirements for Written Representations

This appendix identifies paragraphs in other ISAs that require subject-matter specific written representations. The list is not a substitute for considering the requirements and related application and other explanatory material in ISAs.

...

- ISA 720 (Revised), The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information – paragraph 13(c)

ISA 600, Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)

Appendix 1

(Ref: Para. A19)

Illustration of Auditor's Report Where the Group Engagement Team Is Not Able to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence on Which to Base the Group Audit Opinion

Illustration - Example of a Qualified Opinion Where the Group Engagement Team Is Not Able to Obtain Sufficient Appropriate Audit Evidence on Which to Base the Group Audit Opinion

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of consolidated financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 applies).
- The consolidated financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the consolidated financial statements in ISA 210.
- The group engagement team is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence relating to a

significant component accounted for by the equity method (recognized at \$15 million in the statement of financial position, which reflects total assets of \$60 million) because the group engagement team did not have access to the accounting records, management, or auditor of the component.

- The group engagement team has read the audited financial statements of the component as at December 31, 20X1, including the auditor's report thereon, and considered related financial information kept by group management in relation to the component.
- In the group engagement partner's judgment, the effect on the group financial statements of this inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence is material but not pervasive.⁸⁷
- The International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants' Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants comprises all of the relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the qualified opinion on the consolidated financial statements also affects the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the consolidated financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the consolidated financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the consolidated financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements⁸⁸

Qualified Opinion

We have audited the consolidated financial statements of ABC Company and its subsidiaries (the Group), which comprise the consolidated statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the consolidated statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, except for the possible effects of the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects (or *give a true and fair view of*), the financial position of the Group as at December 31, 20X1, and

⁸⁷ If, in the group engagement partner's judgment, the effect on the group financial statements of the inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence is material and pervasive, the group engagement partner would disclaim an opinion in accordance with ISA 705 (Revised).

⁸⁸ The sub-title, "Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

(of) their financial performance and cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Qualified Opinion

ABC Company's investment in XYZ Company, a foreign associate acquired during the year and accounted for by the equity method, is carried at \$15 million on the consolidated statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and ABC's share of XYZ's net income of \$1 million is included in the consolidated statement of comprehensive income for the year then ended. We were unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the carrying amount of ABC's investment in XYZ as at December 31, 20X1 and ABC's share of XYZ's net income for the year because we were denied access to the financial information, management, and the auditors of XYZ. Consequently, we were unable to determine whether any adjustments to these amounts were necessary.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Group in accordance with the International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants' *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (IESBA Code), and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the IESBA Code. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified audit opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised) – see Illustration 6 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised). The last paragraph of the other information section in Illustration 6 would be customized to describe the specific matter giving rise to the qualified opinion that also affects the other information.]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Consolidated Financial Statements⁸⁹

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised)⁹⁰ – see Illustration 2 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in ISA 700 (Revised). The last two paragraphs which are applicable for audits of listed entities only would not be included.]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

⁸⁹ Throughout these illustrative auditor's reports, the terms management and those charged with governance may need to be replaced by another term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.

⁹⁰ ISA 700 (Revised), *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*

[Date]

ISA 700 (Revised), Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements **Requirements**

Auditor's Report for Audits Conducted in Accordance with International Standards on Auditing

...

Other Information

32. Where applicable, the auditor shall report in accordance with ISA 720 (Revised).

Responsibilities for the Financial Statements

~~32~~33. The auditor's report shall include a section with a heading "Responsibilities of Management for the Financial Statements." The auditor's report shall use the term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction and need not refer specifically to "management". In some jurisdictions, the appropriate reference may be to those charged with governance. (Ref: Para. A39)*

...

Auditor's Report Prescribed by Law or Regulation

~~49~~50. If the auditor is required by law or regulation of a specific jurisdiction to use a specific layout, or wording of the auditor's report, the auditor's report shall refer to International Standards on Auditing only if the auditor's report includes, at a minimum, each of the following elements: (Ref: Para. A70–A71)

- (a) A title.
- (b) An addressee, as required by the circumstances of the engagement.
- (c) An Opinion section containing an expression of opinion on the financial statements and a reference to the applicable financial reporting framework used to prepare the financial statements (including identifying the jurisdiction of origin of the financial reporting framework that is not International Financial Reporting Standards or International Public Sector Accounting Standards, see paragraph 26).
- (d) An identification of the entity's financial statements that have been audited.
- (e) A statement that the auditor is independent of the entity in accordance with the relevant ethical requirements relating to the audit, and has fulfilled the auditor's other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. The statement shall identify the jurisdiction of origin of the relevant ethical requirements or refer to the IESBA Code.
- (f) Where applicable, a section that addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the reporting requirements in paragraph 22 of ISA 570 (Revised).
- (g) Where applicable, a Basis for Qualified (or Adverse) Opinion section that addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the reporting requirements in paragraph 23 of ISA 570 (Revised).

* When the conforming amendment becomes effective, this paragraph will become paragraph 33 and all subsequent paragraphs will be renumbered accordingly.

- (h) Where applicable, a section that includes the information required by ISA 701, or additional information about the audit that is prescribed by law or regulation and that addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the reporting requirements in that ISA.⁹¹ (Ref: Para. A72–A75)
- (i) Where applicable, a section that addresses the reporting requirements in paragraph 24 of ISA 720 (Revised).⁹²
- (j) A description of management's responsibilities for the preparation of the financial statements and an identification of those responsible for the oversight of the financial reporting process that addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the requirements in paragraphs 33–36.
- (k) A reference to International Standards on Auditing and the law or regulation, and a description of the auditor's responsibilities for an audit of the financial statements that addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the requirements in paragraphs 37–40. (Ref: Paras. A54–A55)
- (l) For audits of complete sets of general purpose financial statements of listed entities, the name of the engagement partner unless, in rare circumstances, such disclosure is reasonably expected to lead to a significant personal security threat.
- (m) The auditor's signature.
- (n) The auditor's address.
- (o) The date of the auditor's report.

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Supplementary Information Presented with the Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 53–54)

...

A79. The fact that supplementary information is unaudited does not relieve the auditor of the responsibilities described in ISA 720 (Revised).

Appendix

(Ref: Para. A14)

Illustrations of Independent Auditor's Reports on Financial Statements

- Illustration 1: An auditor's report on financial statements of a listed entity prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework
- Illustration 2: An auditor's report on consolidated financial statements of a listed entity prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework
- Illustration 3: An auditor's report on financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity prepared in accordance with a fair presentation framework (where reference is made to material that is located on a website of an appropriate authority)
- Illustration 4: An auditor's report on financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity prepared in accordance with a general purpose compliance framework

⁹¹ ISA 701, paragraphs 11-16

⁹² ISA 720 (Revised), paragraph 24

Illustration 1 – Auditor’s Report on Financial Statements of a Listed Entity Prepared in Accordance with a Fair Presentation Framework

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., “clean”) opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit comprise the International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants’ *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* together with the ethical requirements relating to the audit in the jurisdiction, and the auditor refers to both.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor’s report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements⁹³

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (or) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

⁹³ The sub-title “Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements” is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title “Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements” is not applicable.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants' *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants (IESBA Code)* together with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements and the IESBA Code. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ISA 701.]

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised).]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements⁹⁴

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with IFRSs,⁹⁵ and for such internal control as management determines is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the financial statements, management is responsible for assessing the Company's ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless management either intends to liquidate the Company or to cease operations, or has no realistic alternative but to do so.

Those charged with governance are responsible for overseeing the Company's financial reporting process.

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with ISAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements

⁹⁴ Throughout these illustrative auditor's reports, the terms management and those charged with governance may need to be replaced by another term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.

⁹⁵ Where management's responsibility is to prepare financial statements that give a true and fair view, this may read: "Management is responsible for the preparation of financial statements that give a true and fair view in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards, and for such ..."

can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements.

Paragraph 4041(b) of this ISA explains that the shaded material below can be located in an Appendix to the auditor's report. Paragraph 4041 (c) explains that when law, regulation or national auditing standards expressly permit, reference can be made to a website of an appropriate authority that contains the description of the auditor's responsibilities, rather than including this material in the auditor's report, provided that the description on the website addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the description of the auditor's responsibilities below.

As part of an audit in accordance with ISAs, we exercise professional judgment and maintain professional skepticism throughout the audit. We also:

- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.
- Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control.⁹⁶
- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by management.
- Conclude on the appropriateness of management's use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists, we are required to draw attention in our auditor's report to the related disclosures in the financial statements or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor's report. However, future events or conditions may cause the Company to cease to continue as a going concern.
- Evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the financial statements, including the disclosures, and whether the financial statements represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

We communicate with those charged with governance regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that we identify during our audit.

We also provide those charged with governance with a statement that we have complied with relevant ethical requirements regarding independence, and to communicate with them all relationships and other matters that may reasonably be thought to bear on our independence, and where applicable, related safeguards.

From the matters communicated with those charged with governance, we determine those matters that were of most significance in the audit of the financial statements of the current period and are therefore the key audit matters. We describe these matters in our auditor's report unless law or regulation precludes public disclosure about the matter or when, in extremely rare circumstances, we determine that a matter

⁹⁶ This sentence would be modified, as appropriate, in circumstances when the auditor also has a responsibility to issue an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements.

should not be communicated in our report because the adverse consequences of doing so would reasonably be expected to outweigh the public interest benefits of such communication.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[The form and content of this section of the auditor's report would vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities prescribed by local law, regulation, or national auditing standards. The matters addressed by other law, regulation or national auditing standards (referred to as "other reporting responsibilities") shall be addressed within this section unless the other reporting responsibilities address the same topics as those presented under the reporting responsibilities required by the ISAs as part of the Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements section. The reporting of other reporting responsibilities that address the same topics as those required by the ISAs may be combined (i.e., included in the Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements section under the appropriate subheadings) provided that the wording in the auditor's report clearly differentiates the other reporting responsibilities from the reporting that is required by the ISAs where such a difference exists.]

The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor's report is [name].

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

Illustration 2 – Auditor's Report on Consolidated Financial Statements of a Listed Entity Prepared in Accordance with a Fair Presentation Framework

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of consolidated financial statements of a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is a group audit of an entity with subsidiaries (i.e., ISA 600 applies).
- The consolidated financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the consolidated financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants' *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* comprises all of the relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the consolidated financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the consolidated financial statements.

- In addition to the audit of the consolidated financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements⁹⁷

Opinion

We have audited the consolidated financial statements of ABC Company and its subsidiaries (the Group), which comprise the consolidated statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the consolidated statement of comprehensive income, consolidated statement of changes in equity and consolidated statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the consolidated financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, the accompanying consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the consolidated financial position of the Group as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its consolidated financial performance and its consolidated cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Group in accordance with the International Ethics Standards Board for Accountants' *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (IESBA Code), and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the IESBA Code. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the consolidated financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the consolidated financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ISA 701.]

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised).]

⁹⁷ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Consolidated Financial Statements⁹⁸

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in accordance with IFRSs,⁹⁹ and for such internal control as management determines is necessary to enable the preparation of consolidated financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the consolidated financial statements, management is responsible for assessing the Group's ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless management either intends to liquidate the Group or to cease operations, or has no realistic alternative but to do so.

Those charged with governance are responsible for overseeing the Group's financial reporting process.

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with ISAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these consolidated financial statements.

Paragraph 4041 (b) of this ISA explains that the shaded material below can be located in an Appendix to the auditor's report. Paragraph 4041 (c) explains that when law, regulation or national auditing standards expressly permit, reference can be made to a website of an appropriate authority that contains the description of the auditor's responsibilities, rather than including this material in the auditor's report, provided that the description on the website addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the description of the auditor's responsibilities below.

As part of an audit in accordance with ISAs, we exercise professional judgment and maintain professional skepticism throughout the audit. We also:

- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.
- Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Group's internal control.¹⁰⁰
- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by management.

⁹⁸ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

⁹⁹ Where management's responsibility is to prepare financial statements that give a true and fair view, this may read: "Management is responsible for the preparation of financial statements that give a true and fair view in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards, and for such ..."

¹⁰⁰ This sentence would be modified, as appropriate, in circumstances when the auditor also has a responsibility to issue an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the consolidated financial statements.

- Conclude on the appropriateness of management's use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the Group's ability to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists, we are required to draw attention in our auditor's report to the related disclosures in the consolidated financial statements or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor's report. However, future events or conditions may cause the Group to cease to continue as a going concern.
- Evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the consolidated financial statements, including the disclosures, and whether the consolidated financial statements represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.
- Obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the financial information of the entities or business activities within the Group to express an opinion on the consolidated financial statements. We are responsible for the direction, supervision and performance of the group audit. We remain solely responsible for our audit opinion.

We communicate with those charged with governance regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that we identify during our audit.

We also provide those charged with governance with a statement that we have complied with relevant ethical requirements regarding independence, and to communicate with them all relationships and other matters that may reasonably be thought to bear on our independence, and where applicable, related safeguards.

From the matters communicated with those charged with governance, we determine those matters that were of most significance in the audit of the consolidated financial statements of the current period and are therefore the key audit matters. We describe these matters in our auditor's report unless law or regulation precludes public disclosure about the matter or when, in extremely rare circumstances, we determine that a matter should not be communicated in our report because the adverse consequences of doing so would reasonably be expected to outweigh the public interest benefits of such communication.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[The form and content of this section of the auditor's report would vary depending on the nature of the auditor's other reporting responsibilities prescribed by local law, regulation, or national auditing standards. The matters addressed by other law, regulation or national auditing standards (referred to as "other reporting responsibilities") shall be addressed within this section unless the other reporting responsibilities address the same topics as those presented under the reporting responsibilities required by the ISAs as part of the Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements section. The reporting of other reporting responsibilities that address the same topics as those required by the ISAs may be combined (i.e., included in the Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements section under the appropriate subheadings) provided that the wording in the auditor's report clearly differentiates the other reporting responsibilities from the reporting that is required by the ISAs where such a difference exists.]

The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor's report is [name].

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

Illustration 3 – Auditor's Report on Financial Statements of an Entity Other than a Listed Entity Prepared in Accordance with a Fair Presentation Framework

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- The auditor has no other reporting responsibilities required under local law.
- The auditor elects to refer to the description of the auditor's responsibility included on a website of an appropriate authority.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (or) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised).]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements¹⁰¹

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with IFRSs,¹⁰² and for such internal control as management determines is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the financial statements, management is responsible for assessing the Company's ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless management either intends to liquidate the Company or to cease operations, or has no realistic alternative but to do so.

Those charged with governance are responsible for overseeing the Company's financial reporting process.

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with ISAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements.

A further description of our responsibilities for the audit of the financial statements is located at [Organization's] website at: [website link]. This description forms part of our auditor's report.

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

¹⁰¹ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

¹⁰² Where management's responsibility is to prepare financial statements that give a true and fair view, this may read: "Management is responsible for the preparation of financial statements that give a true and fair view in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards, and for such ..."

[Date]

Illustration 4 – Auditor’s Report on Financial Statements of an Entity Other than a Listed Entity Prepared in Accordance with a General Purpose Compliance Framework

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity required by law or regulation. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with the Financial Reporting Framework (XYZ Law) of Jurisdiction X (that is, a financial reporting framework, encompassing law or regulation, designed to meet the common financial information needs of a wide range of users, but which is not a fair presentation framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., “clean”) opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor’s report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- The auditor has no other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S REPORT

[Appropriate Addressee]

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the balance sheet as at December 31, 20X1, and the income statement, statement of changes in equity and cash flow statement for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements of the Company are prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with XYZ Law of Jurisdiction X.

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are

relevant to our audit of the financial statements in *[jurisdiction]*, and we have fulfilled our other responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as “Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised).]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements¹⁰³

Management is responsible for the preparation of the financial statements in accordance with XYZ Law of Jurisdiction X,¹⁰⁴ and for such internal control as management determines is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the financial statements, management is responsible for assessing the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless management either intends to liquidate the Company or to cease operations, or has no realistic alternative but to do so.

Those charged with governance are responsible for overseeing the Company’s financial reporting process.

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor’s report that includes our opinion. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with ISAs will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements.

Paragraph 4041 (b) of this ISA explains that the shaded material below can be located in an Appendix to the auditor’s report. Paragraph 4041 (c) explains that when law, regulation or national auditing standards expressly permit, reference can be made to a website of an appropriate authority that contains the description of the auditor’s responsibilities, rather than including this material in the auditor’s report, provided that the description on the website addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the description of the auditor’s responsibilities below.

As part of an audit in accordance with ISAs, we exercise professional judgment and maintain professional skepticism throughout the audit. We also:

- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may

¹⁰³ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

¹⁰⁴ Where management’s responsibility is to prepare financial statements that give a true and fair view, this may read: “Management is responsible for the preparation of financial statements that give a true and fair view in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards, and for such ...”

involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.

- Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control.¹⁰⁵
- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by management.
- Conclude on the appropriateness of management's use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists, we are required to draw attention in our auditor's report to the related disclosures in the financial statements or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor's report. However, future events or conditions may cause the Company to cease to continue as a going concern.

We communicate with those charged with governance regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that we identify during our audit.

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

ISA 701, Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor's Report Application and Other Explanatory Material

Communicating Key Audit Matters

...

Descriptions of Individual Key Audit Matters (Ref: Para. 13)

...

A38. ISA 720 (Revised) defines the term annual report and explains that documents such as a management report, management commentary, or operating and financial review or similar reports by those charged with governance (e.g., a directors' report); a Chairman's statement; corporate governance statement; or internal control and risk assessment reports may form part of the annual report.¹⁰⁶ ISA 720 (Revised) addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to other information included in the annual report. Although the auditor's opinion on the financial statements does not cover extend to the other information addressed by ISA 720.⁴⁰⁷ the auditor may consider this

¹⁰⁵ This sentence would be modified, as appropriate, in circumstances when the auditor also has responsibility to issue an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control in conjunction with the audit of the financial statements.

¹⁰⁶ ISA 720 (Revised), The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information, paragraphs 12(a) and A1–A3

⁴⁰⁷ ISA 720, The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements

information, as well as other publicly available communications by the entity or other credible sources, in formulating the description of a key audit matter.

ISA 705 (Revised), Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report

Requirements

Considerations When the Auditor Disclaims an Opinion on the Financial Statements

29. Unless required by law or regulation, when the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements, the auditor's report shall not include a Key Audit Matters section in accordance with ISA 701 or an Other Information section in accordance with ISA 720 (Revised).^{108, 109} (Ref: Para. A26)

...

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Considerations When the Auditor Disclaims an Opinion on the Financial Statements (Ref: Para. 29)

- A26. Providing the reasons for the auditor's inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence within the Basis for Disclaimer of Opinion section of the auditor's report provides useful information to users in understanding why the auditor has disclaimed an opinion on the financial statements and may further guard against inappropriate reliance on them. However, communication of any key audit matters other than the matter(s) giving rise to the disclaimer of opinion may suggest that the financial statements as a whole are more credible in relation to those matters than would be appropriate in the circumstances, and would be inconsistent with the disclaimer of opinion on the financial statements as a whole. Similarly, it would not be appropriate to include an Other Information section in accordance with ISA 720 (Revised) addressing the auditor's consideration of the consistency of the other information with the financial statements. Accordingly, paragraph 29 of this ISA prohibits a Key Audit Matters section or an Other Information section from being included in the auditor's report when the auditor disclaims an opinion on the financial statements, unless the auditor is otherwise required by law or regulation to communicate key audit matters or to report on other information.

Appendix

(Ref: Para. A17–A18, A25)

Illustrations of Auditor's Reports with Modifications to the Opinion

- Illustration 1: An auditor's report containing a qualified opinion due to a material misstatement of the financial statements.
- Illustration 2: An auditor's report containing an adverse opinion due to a material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements.
- Illustration 3: An auditor's report containing a qualified opinion due to the auditor's inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding a foreign associate.

¹⁰⁸ ISA 701, *Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraphs 11–13

¹⁰⁹ ISA 720 (Revised), The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information, paragraph A54

- Illustration 4: An auditor's report containing a disclaimer of opinion due to the auditor's inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about a single element of the consolidated financial statements.
- Illustration 5: An auditor's report containing a disclaimer of opinion due to the auditor's inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about multiple elements of the financial statements.

Illustration 1 – Qualified Opinion due to a Material Misstatement of the Financial Statements

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600¹¹⁰ does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.¹¹¹
- Inventories are misstated. The misstatement is deemed to be material but not pervasive to the financial statements (i.e., a qualified opinion is appropriate).
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the qualified opinion on the consolidated financial statements also affects the other information
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements¹¹²

Qualified Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes

¹¹⁰ ISA 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*

¹¹¹ ISA 210, *Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements*

¹¹² The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, except for the effects of the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Qualified Opinion

The Company's inventories are carried in the statement of financial position at xxx. Management has not stated the inventories at the lower of cost and net realizable value but has stated them solely at cost, which constitutes a departure from IFRSs. The Company's records indicate that, had management stated the inventories at the lower of cost and net realizable value, an amount of xxx would have been required to write the inventories down to their net realizable value. Accordingly, cost of sales would have been increased by xxx, and income tax, net income and shareholders' equity would have been reduced by xxx, xxx and xxx, respectively.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised) – see Illustration 6 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised). The last paragraph of the other information section in Illustration 6 would be customized to describe the specific matter giving rise to the qualified opinion that also affects the other information.]

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters. In addition to the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section we have determined the matters described below to be the key audit matters to be communicated in our report.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ISA 701.]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements¹¹³

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

¹¹³ Throughout the illustrative auditor's reports, the terms management and those charged with governance may need to be replaced by another term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor's report is *[name]*.

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

Illustration 2 – Adverse Opinion due to a Material Misstatement of the Consolidated Financial Statements

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of consolidated financial statements of a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is a group audit of an entity with subsidiaries (i.e., ISA 600 applies).
- The consolidated financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the consolidated financial statements in ISA 210.
- The consolidated financial statements are materially misstated due to the non-consolidation of a subsidiary. The material misstatement is deemed to be pervasive to the consolidated financial statements. The effects of the misstatement on the consolidated financial statements have not been determined because it was not practicable to do so (i.e., an adverse opinion is appropriate).
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- ISA 701 applies; however, the auditor has determined that there are no key audit matters other than the matter described in the Basis for Adverse Opinion section.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the adverse opinion on the consolidated financial statements also affects the other information
- Those responsible for oversight of the consolidated financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the consolidated financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the consolidated financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements¹¹⁴

Adverse Opinion

We have audited the consolidated financial statements of ABC Company and its subsidiaries (the Group), which comprise the consolidated statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the consolidated statement of comprehensive income, consolidated statement of changes in equity and consolidated statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the consolidated financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, because of the significance of the matter discussed in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying consolidated financial statements do not present fairly (or *do not give a true and fair view of*) the consolidated financial position of the Group as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its consolidated financial performance and its consolidated cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Adverse Opinion

As explained in Note X, the Group has not consolidated subsidiary XYZ Company that the Group acquired during 20X1 because it has not yet been able to determine the fair values of certain of the subsidiary's material assets and liabilities at the acquisition date. This investment is therefore accounted for on a cost basis. Under IFRSs, the Company should have consolidated this subsidiary and accounted for the acquisition based on provisional amounts. Had XYZ Company been consolidated, many elements in the accompanying consolidated financial statements would have been materially affected. The effects on the consolidated financial statements of the failure to consolidate have not been determined.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Group in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the consolidated financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our adverse opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised) – see Illustration 7 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised). The last paragraph of the other information section in Illustration 7 would be customized to describe the specific matter giving rise to the qualified opinion that also affects the other information.]

Key Audit Matters

Except for the matter described in the *Basis for Adverse Opinion* section, we have determined that there are no other key audit matters to communicate in our report.

¹¹⁴ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Consolidated Financial Statements¹¹⁵

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor's report is [name].

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

Illustration 3 – Qualified Opinion due to the Auditor's Inability to Obtain Sufficient Audit Evidence Regarding a Foreign Associate

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of consolidated financial statements of a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is a group audit of an entity with subsidiaries (i.e., ISA 600 applies).
- The consolidated financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the consolidated financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor was unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding an investment in a foreign associate. The possible effects of the inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence are deemed to be material but not pervasive to the consolidated financial statements (i.e., a qualified opinion is appropriate).
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and the matter giving rise to the qualified opinion on the consolidated financial statements also affects the other information
- Those responsible for oversight of the consolidated financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the consolidated financial statements.

¹¹⁵ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction

- In addition to the audit of the consolidated financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements¹¹⁶

Qualified Opinion

We have audited the consolidated financial statements of ABC Company and its subsidiaries (the Group), which comprise the consolidated statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the consolidated statement of comprehensive income, consolidated statement of changes in equity and consolidated statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the consolidated financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, except for the possible effects of the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Group as at December 31, 20X1, and (or) its consolidated financial performance and its consolidated cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Qualified Opinion

The Group's investment in XYZ Company, a foreign associate acquired during the year and accounted for by the equity method, is carried at xxx on the consolidated statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and ABC's share of XYZ's net income of xxx is included in ABC's income for the year then ended. We were unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about the carrying amount of ABC's investment in XYZ as at December 31, 20X1 and ABC's share of XYZ's net income for the year because we were denied access to the financial information, management, and the auditors of XYZ. Consequently, we were unable to determine whether any adjustments to these amounts were necessary.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Group in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the consolidated financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified opinion.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised) – see Illustration 6 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised). The last paragraph of the other information section in Illustration 6 would be customized to describe the specific matter giving rise to the qualified opinion that also affects the other information.]

¹¹⁶ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the consolidated financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the consolidated financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters. In addition to the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section, we have determined the matters described below to be the key audit matters to be communicated in our report.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ISA 701.]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Consolidated Financial Statements¹¹⁷

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Consolidated Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 2 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor's report is [name].

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

ISA 706 (Revised), Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report

Introduction

Scope of this ISA

...

3. ISA 570 (Revised)¹¹⁸ and ISA 720 (Revised)¹¹⁹ establishes requirements and provides guidance about communication in the auditor's report relating to going concern and other information, respectively.

¹¹⁷ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction

¹¹⁸ ISA 570 (Revised), *Going Concern*

¹¹⁹ ISA 720 (Revised), *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information*

Appendix 3

(Ref: Para. A17)

Illustration of an Auditor's Report that Includes a Key Audit Matters Section, an Emphasis of Matter Paragraph, and an Other Matter Paragraph

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600¹²⁰ does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs) (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- Between the date of the financial statements and the date of the auditor's report, there was a fire in the entity's production facilities, which was disclosed by the entity as a subsequent event. In the auditor's judgment, the matter is of such importance that it is fundamental to users' understanding of the financial statements. The matter did not require significant auditor attention in the audit of the financial statements in the current period.
- Key audit matters have been communicated in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Corresponding figures are presented, and the prior period's financial statements were audited by a predecessor auditor. The auditor is not prohibited by law or regulation from referring to the predecessor auditor's report on the corresponding figures and has decided to do so.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

¹²⁰ ISA 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements¹²¹

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

Emphasis of Matter¹²²

We draw attention to Note X of the financial statements, which describes the effects of a fire in the Company's production facilities. Our opinion is not modified in respect of this matter.

Key Audit Matters

Key audit matters are those matters that, in our professional judgment, were of most significance in our audit of the financial statements of the current period. These matters were addressed in the context of our audit of the financial statements as a whole, and in forming our opinion thereon, and we do not provide a separate opinion on these matters.

[Description of each key audit matter in accordance with ISA 701.]

Other Matter

The financial statements of ABC Company for the year ended December 31, 20X0, were audited by another auditor who expressed an unmodified opinion on those statements on March 31, 20X1.

¹²¹ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

¹²² As noted in paragraph A16, an Emphasis of Matter paragraph may be presented either directly before or after the Key Audit Matters section based on the auditor's judgment as to the relative significance of the information included in the Emphasis of Matter paragraph.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as “Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised).]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements¹²³

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

The engagement partner on the audit resulting in this independent auditor’s report is [name].

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

Appendix 4

(Ref: Para. A8)

Illustration of an Auditor’s Report Containing a Qualified Opinion Due to a Departure from the Applicable Financial Reporting Framework and that Includes an Emphasis of Matter Paragraph

For purposes of this illustrative auditor’s report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management’s responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- A departure from the applicable financial reporting framework resulted in a qualified opinion.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).

¹²³ Throughout these illustrative auditor’s reports, the terms management and those charged with governance may need to be replaced by another term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.

- Between the date of the financial statements and the date of the auditor's report, there was a fire in the entity's production facilities, which was disclosed by the entity as a subsequent event. In the auditor's judgment, the matter is of such importance that it is fundamental to users' understanding of the financial statements. The matter did not require significant auditor attention in the audit of the financial statements in the current period.
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has not obtained any other information prior to the date of the auditor's report.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements¹²⁴

Qualified Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, except for the effects of the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Qualified Opinion

The Company's short-term marketable securities are carried in the statement of financial position at xxx. Management has not marked these securities to market but has instead stated them at cost, which constitutes a departure from IFRSs. The Company's records indicate that had management marked the marketable securities to market, the Company would have recognized an unrealized loss of xxx in the statement of comprehensive income for the year. The carrying amount of the securities in the statement of financial position would have been reduced by the same amount at December 31, 20X1, and income tax, net income and shareholders' equity would have been reduced by xxx, xxx and xxx, respectively.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical

¹²⁴ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified opinion.

Emphasis of Matter – Effects of a Fire

We draw attention to Note X of the financial statements, which describes the effects of a fire in the Company's production facilities. Our opinion is not modified in respect of this matter.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements¹²⁵

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

ISA 710, Comparative Information—Corresponding Figures and Comparative Financial Statements

Appendix

Illustrations of Auditor's Reports

Note: Throughout these illustrative auditor's reports, the Opinion section has been positioned first in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised), and the Basis for Opinion section is positioned immediately after the Opinion section. Also, the first and last sentence that was included in the extant auditor's responsibilities section is now subsumed as part of the new Basis for Opinion section.

Illustration 1 – Corresponding Figures (Ref: Para. A5)

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600¹²⁶ does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs) (a general purpose framework).

¹²⁵ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework of the particular jurisdiction

¹²⁶ ISA 600, *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*

- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.¹²⁷
- The auditor's report on the prior period, as previously issued, included a qualified opinion.
- The matter giving rise to the modification is unresolved.
- The effects or possible effects of the matter on the current period's figures are material and require a modification to the auditor's opinion regarding the current period figures.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).¹²⁸
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ISA 701.¹²⁹
- The auditor has not obtained any other information prior to the date of the auditor's report.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements¹³⁰

Qualified Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, except for the effects of the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the ABC Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Qualified Opinion

As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, no depreciation has been provided in the financial statements, which constitutes a departure from IFRSs. This is the result of a decision taken by management at the start of the preceding financial year and caused us to qualify our audit opinion on the financial statements

¹²⁷ ISA 210, *Agreeing the Terms of Audit Engagements*

¹²⁸ ISA 570 (Revised), *Going Concern*

¹²⁹ ISA 701, *Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor's Report*

¹³⁰ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

relating to that year. Based on the straight-line method of depreciation and annual rates of 5% for the building and 20% for the equipment, the loss for the year should be increased by xxx in 20X1 and xxx in 20X0, property, plant and equipment should be reduced by accumulated depreciation of xxx in 20X1 and xxx in 20X0, and the accumulated loss should be increased by xxx in 20X1 and xxx in 20X0.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified audit opinion.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Consolidated Financial Statements¹³¹

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

Illustration 2 – Corresponding Figures (Ref: Para. A5)

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor's report on the prior period, as previously issued, included a qualified opinion.
- The matter giving rise to the modification is unresolved.
- The effects or possible effects of the matter on the current period's figures are immaterial but require a modification to the auditor's opinion because of the effects or possible effects of the unresolved matter on the comparability of the current period's figures and the corresponding figures.

¹³¹ Throughout these illustrative auditor's reports, the terms management and those charged with governance may need to be replaced by another term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.

- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise has not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has not obtained any other information prior to the date of the auditor's report.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements¹³²

Qualified Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, except for the possible effects on the corresponding figures of the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Qualified Opinion

Because we were appointed auditors of the Company during 20X0, we were not able to observe the counting of the physical inventories at the beginning of that period or satisfy ourselves concerning those inventory quantities by alternative means. Since opening inventories affect the determination of the results of operations, we were unable to determine whether adjustments to the results of operations and opening retained earnings might be necessary for 20X0. Our audit opinion on the financial statements for the period ended December 31, 20X0 was modified accordingly. Our opinion on the current period's financial statements is also modified because of the possible effect of this matter on the comparability of the current period's figures and the corresponding figures.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical

¹³² The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified audit opinion.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements¹³³

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

Illustration 3 – Corresponding Figures (Ref: Para. A7)

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise has not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Corresponding figures are presented, and the prior period's financial statements were audited by a predecessor auditor.
- The auditor is not prohibited by law or regulation from referring to the predecessor auditor's report on the corresponding figures and has decided to do so.

¹³³ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction

- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements¹³⁴

Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statement of financial position as at December 31, 20X1, and the statement of comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1, and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Opinion

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Other Matter

The financial statements of the Company for the year ended December 31, 20X0, were audited by another auditor who expressed an unmodified opinion on those statements on March 31, 20X1.

Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as "Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor's Report Thereon"]

[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in ISA 720 (Revised – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of ISA 720 (Revised)).]

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements¹³⁵

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

¹³⁴ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

¹³⁵ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

Illustration 4 – Comparative Financial Statements (Ref: Para. A9)

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report the following are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity using a fair presentation framework. The audit is not a group audit (i.e., ISA 600 does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by management of the entity in accordance with IFRSs (a general purpose framework).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of management's responsibility for the financial statements in ISA 210.
- The auditor is required to report on both the current period financial statements and the prior period financial statements in connection with the current year's audit.
- The auditor's report on the prior period, as previously issued, included a qualified opinion.
- The matter giving rise to the modification is unresolved.
- The effects or possible effects of the matter on the current period's figures are material to both the current period financial statements and prior period financial statements and require a modification to the auditor's opinion.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the jurisdiction.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with ISA 570 (Revised).
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise has not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with ISA 701.
- The auditor has not obtained any other information prior to the date of the auditor's report.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under local law.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Shareholders of ABC Company [or Other Appropriate Addressee]

Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements¹³⁶

Qualified Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Company (the Company), which comprise the statements of financial position as at December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the statements of comprehensive income, statements of changes in equity and statements of cash flows for the years then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including a summary of significant accounting policies.

In our opinion, except for the effects of the matter described in the *Basis for Qualified Opinion* section of our report, the accompanying financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, (or *give a true and fair view of*) the financial position of the Company as at December 31, 20X1 and 20X0 and (of) its financial performance and its cash flows for the years then ended in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

Basis for Qualified Opinion

As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, no depreciation has been provided in the financial statements, which constitutes a departure from IFRSs. Based on the straight-line method of depreciation and annual rates of 5% for the building and 20% for the equipment, the loss for the year should be increased by xxx in 20X1 and xxx in 20X0, property, plant and equipment should be reduced by accumulated depreciation of xxx in 20X1 and xxx in 20X0, and the accumulated loss should be increased by xxx in 20X1 and xxx in 20X0.

We conducted our audit in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (ISAs). Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the *Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements* section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the financial statements in [jurisdiction], and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with these requirements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified audit opinion.

Responsibilities of Management and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements¹³⁷

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements

[Reporting in accordance with ISA 700 (Revised) – see Illustration 1 in ISA 700 (Revised).]

¹³⁶ The sub-title "Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second sub-title "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements" is not applicable.

¹³⁷ Or other terms that are appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction

[Signature in the name of the audit firm, the personal name of the auditor, or both, as appropriate for the particular jurisdiction]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

ISA 810, *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements*

Requirements

Other Information in Documents Containing Summary Financial Statements

24. The auditor shall read the other information included in a document containing the summary financial statements and related auditor's report to consider whether there is~~identify a~~ material inconsistency~~ies between the other information and, if any, with the summary financial statements.~~ If, ~~on reading the other information,~~ the auditor identifies a material inconsistency, the auditor shall determine whether the summary financial statements or the other information needs to be revised. If, ~~on reading the other information,~~ the auditor becomes aware of ~~an apparent material misstatement of fact~~that the other information needs to be revised, the auditor shall discuss the matter with management. (Ref: Para. A19)

Application and Other Explanatory Material

- A19. ISA 720 (Revised)¹³⁸ contains requirements and guidance ~~relating regarding the auditor's responsibilities relating to reading other information in a financial statement audit engagement included in a document containing the audited financial statements and related auditor's report, and responding to material inconsistencies and material misstatements of fact.~~ Adapted as necessary in the circumstances, they may be helpful in applying the requirement in paragraph 24.

¹³⁸ ISA 720 (Revised), *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*

International Standards on Auditing™, International Standards on Assurance Engagements™, International Standards on Review Engagements™, International Standards on Related Services™, International Standards on Quality Control™, International Auditing Practice Notes™, Exposure Drafts, Consultation Papers, and other IAASB® publications are published by, and copyright of, IFAC®.

The IAASB and IFAC do not accept responsibility for loss caused to any person who acts or refrains from acting in reliance on the material in this publication, whether such loss is caused by negligence or otherwise.

The IAASB logo, 'International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board®', 'IAASB', 'International Standard on Auditing™', 'ISA™', 'International Standard on Assurance Engagements', 'ISAE™', 'International Standards on Review Engagements', 'ISRE™', 'International Standards on Related Services', 'ISRS™', 'International Standards on Quality Control', 'ISQC™', 'International Auditing Practice Note', 'IAPN™', the IFAC logo, 'International Federation of Accountants®', and 'IFAC' are trademarks or registered trademarks and service marks of IFAC.

Copyright © April 2015 by the IFAC®. All rights reserved. Written permission from IFAC® is required to reproduce, store or transmit, or to make other similar uses of, this document, except as permitted by law. Contact permissions@ifac.org.

ISBN: 978-1-60815-215-5

Published by:



IAASB

**International Auditing
and Assurance
Standards Board®**

529 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10017
T + 1 (212) 286-9344 **F** +1 (212) 286-9570
www.iaasb.org

ASA 720
(October 2009)

Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities
Relating to Other Information
in Documents Containing an
Audited Financial Report

Issued by the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board



Australian Government

Auditing and Assurance Standards Board

Obtaining a Copy of this Auditing Standard

This Auditing Standard is available on the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB) website: www.auasb.gov.au

Contact Details

Auditing and Assurance Standards Board	Phone: (03) 8080 7400
Level 7	Fax: (03) 8080 7450
600 Bourke Street	E-mail: enquiries@auasb.gov.au
Melbourne Victoria 3000	
AUSTRALIA	
	Postal Address:
	PO Box 204
	Collins Street West
	Melbourne Victoria 8007
	AUSTRALIA

COPYRIGHT

© Commonwealth of Australia 2009. The text, graphics and layout of this Auditing Standard are protected by Australian copyright law and the comparable law of other countries. Reproduction within Australia in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and non-commercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgment of the source. Requests and enquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes within Australia should be addressed to the Executive Director, Auditing and Assurance Standards Board, PO Box 204, Collins Street West, Melbourne Victoria 8007. Otherwise, no part of the Auditing Standard may be reproduced, stored or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of the AUASB except as permitted by law.

ISSN 1833-4393

CONTENTS

PREFACE

AUTHORITY STATEMENT

Paragraphs

Application Aus 0.1-Aus 0.2

Operative Date Aus 0.3

Introduction

Scope of this Auditing Standard 1-2

Effective Date 3

Objective 4

Definitions..... 5

Requirements

Reading Other Information 6-7

Material Inconsistencies..... 8-13

Material Misstatements of Fact..... 14-16

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of this Auditing Standard A1-A2

Definition of Other Information..... A3-A4

Reading Other Information A5

Material Inconsistencies..... A6-A9

Material Misstatements of Fact..... A10-A11

Conformity with International Standards on Auditing

PREFACE

Reasons for Issuing Auditing Standard ASA 720 ***The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other*** ***Information in Documents Containing an Audited*** ***Financial Report***

The Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB) issues Auditing Standard ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report* pursuant to the requirements of the legislative provisions and the Strategic Direction explained below.

The AUASB is an independent statutory board of the Australian Government established under section 227A of the *Australian Securities and Investments Commission Act 2001*, as amended (ASIC Act). Under section 336 of the *Corporations Act 2001*, the AUASB may make Australian Auditing Standards for the purposes of the corporations legislation. These Auditing Standards are legislative instruments under the *Legislative Instruments Act 2003*.

Under the Strategic Direction given to the AUASB by the Financial Reporting Council (FRC), the AUASB is required to have regard to any programme initiated by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB) for the revision and enhancement of the International Standards on Auditing (ISAs) and to make appropriate consequential amendments to the Australian Auditing Standards. Accordingly, the AUASB has decided to revise and redraft the Australian Auditing Standards using the equivalent redrafted ISAs.

Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report

Main Features

This Auditing Standard establishes requirements and provides application and other explanatory material regarding the auditor's responsibilities relating to other information in documents containing an audited financial report and the auditor's report thereon.

This Auditing Standard:

- (a) requires the auditor to read the other information to identify material inconsistencies, if any, with the audited financial report;
- (b) requires the auditor to make appropriate arrangements with management to obtain the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report;
- (c) requires the auditor to determine whether the audited financial report or the other information needs to be revised when material inconsistencies are identified; and
- (d) describes the auditor's responsibilities when material inconsistencies are identified.

Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents
Containing an Audited Financial Report

AUTHORITY STATEMENT

The Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB) makes this Auditing Standard ASA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report* pursuant to section 227B of the *Australian Securities and Investments Commission Act 2001* and section 336 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

This Auditing Standard is to be read in conjunction with ASA 101 *Preamble to Australian Auditing Standards*, which sets out the intentions of the AUASB on how the Australian Auditing Standards, operative for financial reporting periods commencing on or after 1 January 2010, are to be understood, interpreted and applied. This Auditing Standard is to be read also in conjunction with ASA 200 *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Australian Auditing Standards*.

Dated: 27 October 2009

M H Kelsall
Chairman - AUASB

AUDITING STANDARD ASA 720

The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report

Application

- Aus 0.1 This Auditing Standard applies to:
- (a) an audit of a financial report for a financial year, or an audit of a financial report for a half-year, in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*; and
 - (b) an audit of a financial report, or a complete set of financial statements, for any other purpose.
- Aus 0.2 This Auditing Standard also applies, as appropriate, to an audit of other historical financial information.

Operative Date

- Aus 0.3 This Auditing Standard is operative for financial reporting periods commencing on or after 1 January 2010.

Introduction

Scope of this Auditing Standard

1. This Auditing Standard deals with the auditor's responsibilities relating to other information in documents containing an audited financial report and the auditor's report thereon. In the absence of any separate requirement in the particular circumstances of the engagement, the auditor's opinion does not cover other information and the auditor has no specific responsibility for determining whether or not other information is properly stated. However, the auditor reads the other information because the credibility of the audited financial report may be undermined by material inconsistencies between the audited financial report and other information. (Ref: Para. A1)

Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report

2. In this Auditing Standard “documents containing an audited financial report” refers to annual reports (or similar documents), that are issued to owners (or similar stakeholders), containing an audited financial report and the auditor’s report thereon. This Auditing Standard may also be applied, as necessary in the circumstances, to other documents containing an audited financial report, such as those used in securities offerings.¹ (Ref: Para. A2)

Effective Date

3. [Deleted by the AUASB. Refer Aus 0.3]

Objective

4. The objective of the auditor is to respond appropriately when documents containing an audited financial report and the auditor’s report thereon include other information that could undermine the credibility of that financial report and the auditor’s report.

Definitions

5. For purposes of the Australian Auditing Standards, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:
- (a) Other information means financial and non-financial information (other than the financial report and the auditor’s report thereon) which is included, either by law, regulation or custom, in a document containing an audited financial report and the auditor’s report thereon.
(Ref: Para. A3-A4)
 - (b) Inconsistency means other information that contradicts information contained in the audited financial report. A material inconsistency may raise doubt about the audit conclusions drawn from audit evidence previously obtained and, possibly, about the basis for the auditor’s opinion on the financial report.
 - (c) Misstatement of fact means other information that is unrelated to matters appearing in the audited financial report that is incorrectly stated or presented. A material

¹ See ASA 200 *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Australian Auditing Standards*, paragraph 2.

Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents
Containing an Audited Financial Report

misstatement of fact may undermine the credibility of the document containing the audited financial report.

Requirements

Reading Other Information

6. The auditor shall read the other information to identify material inconsistencies, if any, with the audited financial report.
7. The auditor shall make appropriate arrangements with management or those charged with governance to obtain the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report. If it is not possible to obtain all the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report, the auditor shall read such other information as soon as practicable.
(Ref: Para. A5)

Material Inconsistencies

8. If, on reading the other information, the auditor identifies a material inconsistency, the auditor shall determine whether the audited financial report or the other information needs to be revised.

Material Inconsistencies Identified in Other Information Obtained Prior to the Date of the Auditor's Report

9. If revision of the audited financial report is necessary and management refuses to make the revision, the auditor shall modify the opinion in the auditor's report in accordance with ASA 705.²
10. If revision of the other information is necessary and management refuses to make the revision, the auditor shall communicate this matter to those charged with governance, unless all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity;³ and
 - (a) Include in the auditor's report an Other Matter(s) paragraph describing the material inconsistency in accordance with ASA 706;⁴ or

² See ASA 705 *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*.

³ See ASA 260 *Communication with Those Charged with Governance*, paragraph 13.

⁴ See ASA 706 *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraph 8.

Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report

- (b) Withhold the auditor's report; or
- (c) Withdraw from the engagements, where withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation.
(Ref: Para. A6-A7)

Aus 10.1 Withholding the auditor's report is not permitted under the *Corporations Act 2001*.

Material Inconsistencies Identified in Other Information Obtained Subsequent to the Date of the Auditor's Report

- 11. If revision of the audited financial report is necessary, the auditor shall follow the relevant requirements in ASA 560.⁵
- 12. If revision of the other information is necessary and management agrees to make the revision, the auditor shall carry out the procedures necessary under the circumstances. (Ref: Para. A8)
- 13. If revision of the other information is necessary, but management refuses to make the revision, the auditor shall notify those charged with governance, unless all of those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity, of the auditor's concern regarding the other information and take any further appropriate action.
(Ref: Para. A9)

Material Misstatements of Fact

- 14. If, on reading the other information for the purpose of identifying material inconsistencies, the auditor becomes aware of an apparent material misstatement of fact, the auditor shall discuss the matter with management. (Ref: Para. A10)
- 15. If, following such discussions, the auditor still considers that there is an apparent material misstatement of fact, the auditor shall request management to consult with a qualified third party, such as the entity's legal counsel, and the auditor shall consider the advice received.
- 16. If the auditor concludes that there is a material misstatement of fact in the other information which management refuses to correct, the auditor shall notify those charged with governance, unless all of

⁵ See ASA 560 *Subsequent Events*, paragraphs 10-17.

Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents
Containing an Audited Financial Report

those charged with governance are involved in managing the entity,
of the auditor's concern regarding the other information and take
any further appropriate action. (Ref: Para. A11)

* * *

Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Scope of this Auditing Standard

Additional Responsibilities, through Statutory or Other Regulatory Requirements, in Relation to Other Information (Ref: Para. 1)

- A1. The auditor may have additional responsibilities, through statutory or other regulatory requirements,* in relation to other information that are beyond the scope of this Auditing Standard. For example, some jurisdictions may require the auditor to apply specific procedures to certain of the other information such as required supplementary data or to express an opinion on the reliability of performance indicators described in the other information. Where there are such obligations, the auditor's additional responsibilities are determined by the nature of the engagement and by law, regulation and professional standards. If such other information is omitted or contains deficiencies, the auditor may be required by law or regulation to refer to the matter in the auditor's report.

Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report (Ref: Para. 2)

Considerations Specific to Smaller Entities

- A2. Unless required by law or regulation, smaller entities are less likely to issue documents containing an audited financial report. However, an example of such a document would be where a legal requirement exists for an accompanying report by those charged with governance. Examples of other information that may be included in a document containing the audited financial report of a smaller entity are a detailed income statement and a management report.

Definition of Other Information (Ref: Para. 5(a))

- A3. Other information may comprise, for example:
- A report by management or those charged with governance on operations.
 - Financial summaries or highlights.

* See, for example, ASIC Regulatory Guide 34 *Auditors' obligations: reporting to ASIC* (December 2007), which provides guidance on the auditor's responsibilities under sections 311, 601HG and 990K of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing an Audited Financial Report

- Employment data.
 - Planned capital expenditures.
 - Financial ratios.
 - Names of officers and directors.
 - Selected quarterly data.
- A4. For purposes of the Australian Auditing Standards, other information does not encompass, for example:
- A press release or a transmittal memorandum, such as a covering letter, accompanying the document containing the audited financial report and the auditor's report thereon.
 - Information contained in analyst briefings.
 - Information contained on the entity's website.

Reading Other Information (Ref: Para. 7)

- A5. Obtaining the other information prior to the date of the auditor's report enables the auditor to resolve possible material inconsistencies and apparent material misstatements of fact with management on a timely basis. An agreement with management as to when the other information will be available may be helpful.

Material Inconsistencies

Material Inconsistencies Identified in Other Information Obtained Prior to the Date of the Auditor's Report (Ref: Para. 10-Aus 10.1)

- A6. When management refuses to revise the other information, the auditor may base any decision on what further action to take on advice from the auditor's legal counsel.
- Aus A6.1 For example, the auditor may be required to obtain consent from the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC) prior to resigning from certain audits.*

* See, for example, ASIC Regulatory Guide 26 *Resignation of Auditors* (June 1992).

Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents
Containing an Audited Financial Report

Considerations Specific to Public Sector Entities

- A7. In the public sector, withdrawal from the engagement or withholding the auditor's report may not be options. In such cases, the auditor may issue a report to the appropriate statutory body giving details of the inconsistency.

Material Inconsistencies Identified in Other Information Obtained Subsequent to the Date of the Auditor's Report (Ref: Para. 12-13)

- A8. When management agrees to revise the other information, the auditor's procedures may include reviewing the steps taken by management to ensure that individuals in receipt of the previously issued financial report, the auditor's report thereon, and the other information are informed of the revision.
- A9. When management refuses to make the revision of such other information that the auditor concludes is necessary, appropriate further actions by the auditor may include obtaining advice from the auditor's legal counsel.

Material Misstatements of Fact (Ref: Para. 14-16)

- A10. When discussing an apparent material misstatement of fact with management, the auditor may not be able to evaluate the validity of some disclosures included within the other information and management's responses to the auditor's enquiries, and may conclude that valid differences of judgement or opinion exist.
- A11. When the auditor concludes that there is a material misstatement of fact that management refuses to correct, appropriate further actions by the auditor may include obtaining advice from the auditor's legal counsel.

Auditing Standard ASA 720
The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents
Containing an Audited Financial Report

Conformity with International Standards on Auditing

This Auditing Standard conforms with International Standard on Auditing ISA 720 *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, issued by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB), an independent standard-setting board of the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC).

Paragraphs that have been added to this Auditing Standard (and do not appear in the text of the equivalent ISA) are identified with the prefix "Aus".

The following requirement is additional to ISA 720:

- Withholding the auditor's report is not permitted under the *Corporations Act 2001*. [Paragraph Aus 10.1]

Compliance with this Auditing Standard enables compliance with ISA 720.